حمل الآن

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (1)







Revision on Unit 1
I feel good

Vocabulary

foods	أطعمة - مأكولات	sugarcane	قصب السكر
grapes	عنب	seed	بذرة
watermelon	بطيخ	gardener	جنايني - بستاني
farmers	فلاحون - مزارعون	nutrients	مواد مغذية - مغذيات
vegetables	خضراوات	life	الحياة
fruits	فاكهة	land	أرض
candy	حلوى	rich in	غني بـ
salad	سَلَطَة	honest	أمين
wheat	قمح	healthy	صحي
drinks	مشروبات	unhealthy	غير صحي - بصحة جيدة
fishermen	صيادون	banana milkshake	مخفوق الموز بالحليب
emperor	إمبراطور	grow	يزرع - ينمو
palace	قصر	raise - keep	يُرَبّي حيوانات
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	produce	يُنتِج

Language

and و

- تربط بين جملتين تعبران عن أفكار متشابهة أو معنى واحد.

❍ Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants.

But لكن

- تربط بين جملتين تعبران عن التناقض.

❍ I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

The prefix "re" means again

البادئة **"re"** التي تعني مرة أخرى

verb		re + verb	
do	يفعل	redo	يعيد فعل
clean	ينظف	reclean	يعيد تنظيف

Pronunciation & Math

short vowels حروف متحركة قصيرة في النطق		long vowels حروف متحركة طويلة في النطق	
bag	حقيبة	cake	كيك - كعكة
mix	يخلط - يمزج	nose	أنف
mom	أم	rice	أرز

Large digits الأرقام الكبيرة

544,432: five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

Ascending order الترتيب التصاعدي

الترتيب التصاعدي هو ترتيب الأرقام من الأصغر للأكبر:

(2 - 5 - 8 - 10 - 20 - 32 - 44)

Unit 1

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر - يبدو	looked	answer	يجيب - يرد	answered
listen	يستمع	listened	like	يحب	liked
check	يفحص - يراجع	checked	raise	يُرَبي	raised
ask	يسأل	asked	produce	يُنتِج	produced

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	find out	يكتشف	found out
come	يأتي	came	make	يجعل - يصنع	made
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought	see	يرى	saw
grow	يزرع	grew	eat	يأكل	ate
have	يمتلك - يتناول	had	say	يقول	said

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	discuss	يناقش	discussed
walk	يمشي	walked	play	يلعب	played
talk	يتكلم	talked	want	يريد	wanted
complete	يكمل	completed	exercise	يتمرن	exercised
love	يحب	loved	practice	يمارس	practiced

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drink	يشرب	drank	hurt	يُؤْلِم	hurt

Unit 1

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	paint	يدهن - يُلَوِّن	painted
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	clean	ينظف	cleaned
travel	يسافر	traveled	lie	يكذب	lied
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	try	يحاول - يجرب	tried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am, is, are	يكون	was - were	put	يضع	put
have - has	يتناول - يمتلك	had	read	يقرأ	read
give	يعطي	gave	win	يفوز	won
take	يأخذ	took	lose	يخسر - يفقد	lost
make	يجعل - يصنع	made	bring	يُحضِر	brought

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	present	يُقَدِّم	presented
wash	يغسل	washed	decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch	يصطاد - يمسك	caught	speak	يتحدث	spoke
write down	يُدَوِّن	wrote down	hear	يسمع	heard
know	يعرف	knew	show	يعرض	showed
cut	يقطع - يجرح	cut	do - does	يؤدي - يفعل	did

Dictation:

مشروب	أطعمة ....
العَشَاء	عنب ....
.... sugarcane	لبن ....
.... watermelon	أرز ....
.... meat	فلاحون ....
.... breakfast	خضراوات ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يرى	....
يبني	....
يُطْعِم	....

Present	Past
have	....
make	....
get	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

رياضة	....	فاكهة	....
بطيخ	....	كولا	....
....	**banana milkshake**	حلوى	....
....	**something sweet**	سَلَطَة	....
....	**unhealthy drinks**	صحراء	....
....	**video games**	بصحة جيدة - صحي	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يمارس - يتمرن	....
يمشي	....
يؤلم	....

Present	Past
cut	....
talk	....
exercise	....

Dictation:

....	الإمبراطور القادم	....	أمانة
....	قصر	....	ميت
....	جنايني - بستاني	**competition**	....
....	أمين - صادق	**empty pot**	....
....	بذرة	**look after**	....
....	يزرع - نبات	**good at**	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يفوز	....
يخسر	....

Present	Past
lie	....
look after	....

Dictation:

....	أرض	....	مشهور
....	قمح	....	سمك
....	الحياة	**Damietta**	....
....	مواد مُغذّية - مُغذّيات	**governorate**	....
....	ليمون	**rich in**	....
....	صيادون	**guavas**	....

Revision on Unit 2
Desert animals

Vocabulary

camel	جمل	fennec fox	ثعلب الفِنك
crocodile	تمساح	desert	صحراء
lizard	سحلية	leaves	أوراق الشجر
spider	عنكبوت	thick fur	فرو سميك
insects	حشرات	snake	ثعبان
hump	سنام الجمل	beak	منقار
bear	دُب	wing	جناح
pelican	بجعة	protect	تحمي
river	نهر	hungry	جائع
paw	قدم الحيوان	scary	مخيف
claws	مخالب	dangerous	خطير
gazelle	غزالة	noisy	مُزعج - صاخب
horns	قرون	huge	ضخم
coat	جِلْد الحيوان	perfect for	مثالي لـ

Language

(Adjectives) comparison المقارنة

- Comparative degree:

- تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين اثنين (شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا).

- نضيف للصفة القصيرة **(er)** ونضع بعدها كلمة **(than** (من**)**.

❍ Horses are faster than camels.
❍ The new hotel is nicer than the old hotel.

- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما **(more)** أو **(less)** وبعدها **(than)**.

❍ Flowers are more beautiful than grass.
❍ A fox is less dangerous than a snake.

Pronunciation & Math

/p/ and /b/ sounds

p		b	
pelican	بجعة	bird	طائر
pear	كمثرى	bear	دُب
pea	بازلاء	bee	نحلة
pin	دبوس	beak	منقار

Fractions الكسور

$\frac{1}{4}$

1 → **numerator** البسط

4 → **denominator** المقام

- نحن نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية، على سبيل المثال:

1/2 is bigger than 1/4.
1/2 is smaller than 3/4.

Unit 2

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cross	يَعبُر	crossed	control	يتحكم	controlled
help	يساعد	helped	agree	يوافق	agreed
need	يحتاج	needed	use	يستخدم	used
talk	يتكلم	talked	close	يغلق	closed
stop	يتوقف	stopped	live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
can	يستطيع	could	eat	يأكل	ate
get	يحصل على	got	write	يكتب	wrote
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought	read	يقرأ	read

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
discuss	يناقش	discussed	carry	يحمل	carried
walk	يمشي	walked			

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يجعل - يصنع	made	drink	يشرب	drank
come in	يدخل	came in	have	لديه - عنده	had

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
reach	يصل إلى	reached	open	يفتح	opened
lift	يرفع	lifted	describe	يصف	described

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	understand	يفهم	understood

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
finish	يُنْهِي	finished	weigh	يزن	weighed
answer	يرد - يجيب	answered	look	يبدو	looked
protect	يحمي	protected	include	يتضمن	included

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
draw	يرسم	drew	make sure	يتأكد	made sure

Lesson 1

Dictation:

مخيف	....	طائر	....
ضخم	....	جمل	....
....	fennec fox	تمساح	....
....	insects	عنكبوت	....
....	cute	سحلية	....
....	dangerous	ثعبان	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يعيش	....
ينظر	....

Present	Past
control	....
eat	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

لذيذ	....	حصان	....
صحراء	....	جميل	....
....	**perfect for**	سنام الجمل	....
....	**large, flat feet**	قوي	....
....	**on the sand**	مدهش	....
....	**fresh water**	حشائش - عشب	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يعبر	....
يَحْمِل	....

Present	Past
live	....
come in	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

جائع	....	دُب	....
غاضب	....	بجعة	....
....	juicy fish	نهر	....
....	reach for	قدم الحيوان	....
....	Excuse me.	مخالب	....
....	interesting	مندهش	....

Verbs

Past	Present
....	open ....
....	see ....

Past	Present
....	يرفع ....
....	يصل إلى ....

Dictation:

حشرات	....	سحالي	....
حار	....	قرون	....
....	during the day	صحراء	....
....	at night	جِلْد الحيوان	....
....	thick fur	أوراق الشجر	....
....	small mice	غزالة	....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحمي	....	draw	....
يزن	....	answer	....

Revision on Unit 3
Why do we grow plants?

Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
leaves	أوراق الشجر	agricultural habitat	موطِن زراعي
seeds	بذور	desert habitat	موطِن صحراوي
roots	جذور	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
soil	تربة	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
shoot	فسيلة - نبتة	bean plant	نبات الفول
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	reed	بوص - قَصَبْ
noise	ضوضاء	sunflower	زهرة دوار الشمس
papyrus	نبات البردي	acacia	شجرة السنط
paper	ورق	daisy	زهرة اللؤلؤية
sandals	صندل	lake	بحيرة
river	نهر	germination	يُنْبت
process	عملية	famous	مشهور
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	proud of	فخور بـ
grandparents	الجَدَّيْن	work hard	يعمل بجد

Language

(Adjectives) comparison المقارنة

- Superlative degree:

- تُستخدم للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص، أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات، أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء .... وهكذا.
- نُضيف للصفة القصيرة **(est)** ونضع قبلها كلمة **(the)**.

❍ The giraffe is the tallest animal.
❍ The lion is the strongest animal.

- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما **(the most)** أو **(the least)** وتبقى الصفة كما هي.

❍ The rose is the most beautiful flower.
❍ That unit is the least difficult one in the book.

The suffix "-ful"

- The suffix (اللاحقة) **"ful"** means **"full of"**.

Noun of verb		Adjective	
beauty	جَمال	beautiful	جميل
color	لَوْن	colorful	مُزركش الألوان
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون

Pronunciation & Math

the /sw/ and /sl/ sounds

/sw/		/sl/	
swim	يسبح	slice	شريحة
sweet	حلوى	sleep	ينام
swan	بجعة	slippers	شبشب

Large numbers up to billions

1000	100,000	1,000,000
a thousand	a hundred thousand	a million
10,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
ten million	a hundred million	billion

Unit 3

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر - يبدو	looked	want	يريد	wanted
plant	يزرع	planted	talk	يتكلم	talked
call	يُدعى - يُسَمَّى	called	share	يشارك	shared
water	يروي - يسقي	watered	die	يموت	died

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	become	يصبح	became
come	يأتي	came	find	يجد	found
see	يرى	saw	have - has	لديه - عنده	had
take	يأخذ	took	think	يعتقد - يظن	thought

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	compare	يقارن	compared
need	يحتاج	needed	live	يعيش	lived

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
turn	يُحَوِّل	turned	decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
use	يستخدم	used	change	يُغَيِّر - يتغير	changed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past
am - is - are	يكون	was - were
buy	يشتري	bought
bring	يُحضِر	brought
understand	يفهم	understood

Present		Past
swim	يسبح	swam
sweep	يكنس	swept
sleep	ينام	slept
sell	يبيع	sold

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
paint	يُلَوِّن - يدهن	painted
clean	يُنَظِّف	cleaned

Present		Past
face	يواجه	faced
die	يموت	died
drop	يُسْقِط	dropped

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
begin	يبدأ	began
make	يجعل - يصنع	made

Present		Past
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought
do - does	يؤدي - يفعل	did
burn	يحرق - يحترق	burnt (burned)

Dictation:

نبات	زهرة ....
أوراق الشجر	بذور ....
germination process	جذور ....
balcony	فسيلة - نبتة ....
awesome	تربة ....
tomatoes	ضوء الشمس ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يموت	....
يزرع	....

Present	Past
become	....
find	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

زهرة دوار الشمس	....	نهر	....
باذنجان	....	بحيرة	....
....	**agricultural habitat**	زهرة اللوتس	....
....	**desert habitat**	نبات الفول	....
....	**tamarisk**	بوص - قَصْب	....
....	**orange tree**	وردة	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يحتاج	....
يعيش	....

Present	Past
work	....
produce	....

Dictation:

حلوى	....	جاف	....
شبشب	....	أرض	....
....	on the farm	مياه الأمطار	....
....	work hard	صعب	....
....	proud of	ضوضاء	....
....	forty years ago	الجَدَّيْن	....

Verbs

Present	Past
bring	....
decide	....

Present	Past
يزرع	....
يبيع	....

Lessons 4&5

Dictation:

أعلى - فوق	....	نبات البردي	....
دلتا النيل	....	ورق	....
....	**Ancient Egyptians**	مشهور	....
....	**get taller**	صندل	....
....	**germinate**	سِلال	....
....	**used**	عملية	....

Verbs

Present	Past
تبدأ	....
تفتح - تتفتّح	....

Present	Past
drop	....
face	....

Revision on Unit 4
Where do you live?

Vocabulary

bedroom	حجرة نوم	office	مكتب
bathroom	حمام	tourist boat	قارب سياحي
living room	حجرة معيشة	worker	عامل - عاملة
dining room	حجرة طعام	city	مدينة كبيرة
kitchen	مطبخ	safari	رحلة لرؤية الحيوانات في البرية
balcony	بلكونة - شُرفة	tourist	سائح
houseboat	منزل عائم	restaurant	مطعم
tent	خيمة	bazaar	سوق تجاري - بازار
apartment	شقة	behind	خلف
hospital	مستشفى	above	فوق
post office	مكتب بريد	next to	بجوار
shopping mall	مركز تسوُّق - مول	between	بين
park	منتزه - حديقة عامة	in front of	أمام
museum	متحف	under	تحت

Language

Prepositions of place

in	في	above	أعلى - فوق
on	على	next to	بجوار
under	تحت	between	بين
behind	خلف	in front of	أمام

Asking and giving directions:

- Excuse me, where is the hospital?

- Go straight ahead.
- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- It's on the right.
- It's on the left.
- It's on the corner.
- Take the second right.
- Take the second left.

Pronunciation

the /f/ and /v/ sounds

/f/		/v/	
face	وجه	cave	كهف
fan	مروحة	van	عربة مغلقة
foot	قَدَم	living room	حجرة معيشة
fish	سمكة	vegetables	خضراوات

Unit 4

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
relax	يستريح - يسترخي	relaxed	play	يلعب	played
help	يساعد	helped	organize	يُنَظِّم	organized
sound	يبدو	sounded	move to	ينتقل إلى	moved to
talk about	يتكلم عن	talked about	live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do / does	يؤدي - يفعل	did	make	يصنع	made
see	يرى	saw	read	يقرأ	read

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	connect	يربط - يُوَصِّل	connected
work	يعمل	worked	listen	يستمع	listened

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشتري	bought	go	يذهب	went
send	يُرسل	sent	say	يقول	said

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
turn	يستدير	turned	call	يتصل بـ	called
visit	يزور	visited	jump	يقفز	jumped
follow	يتبع	followed	save	يُنقِذ	saved
shout	يصيح - يصرخ	shouted	smile	يبتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	speak	يتحدث	spoke
meet	يقابل	met	fall	يسقط - يقع	fell

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يضيف	added	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
draw	يرسم	drew	make	يجعل - يصنع	made

Lesson 1

Dictation:

بلكونة - شُرفة	....	حجرة نوم	....
بيت	....	حجرة معيشة	....
apartment	....	مطبخ	....
house	....	حَمَّام	....
houseboat	....	خيمة	....
take a shower	....	حجرة طعام	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يسترخي	....
يبدو	....

Present	Past
organize	....
see	....

Dictation:

أمام	مدرسة ....
خلف	مستشفى ....
shopping mall	مكتب بريد ....
supermarket	منتزه - حديقة عامة ....
village	متحف ....
above	بين ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يعمل	....
يتعلم	....

Present	Past
buy	....
send	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

محطة	....	قارب سياحي	....
اللغة الصينية	....	الصيف	....
....	Turn right	عامل - عاملة	....
....	Turn left	بنك - مصرف	....
....	Go straight ahead	مدينة	....
....	sports club	عند الزاوية	....

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	take	....	يستدير ....
....	meet	....	يُنقِذ ....

Dictation:

الصحراء الكبرى	....	مدينة كبيرة	....
رحلة لرؤية الحيوانات في البرية	....	سائح	....
....	**east of Egypt**	الناس - أشخاص	....
....	**Hurghada**	سوق تجاري - بازار	....
....	**interesting things**	مطعم	....
....	**map**	البحر الأحمر	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يتذكر	....
يضيف	....

Present	Past
make	....
draw	....

Revision on Unit 5
Where do you work?

Vocabulary

plumber	سباك	screwdriver	مِفَك
electrician	كهربائي	tape measure	شريط قياس
mechanic	ميكانيكي	safety	أمان
mail carrier	ساعي بريد	mathematician	عالِم رياضيات
bus driver	سائق أتوبيس	architect	مهندس معماري
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
electricity	كهرباء	weather	طقس
electric shock	صدمة كهربية	pros	مميزات
socket	كُبس النور (بريزة)	cons	عيوب
plug	فيشة - يضع فيشة	report	تقرير
flash	وميض	patient	صبور
lightning	البرق	curious	محب للاستطلاع - فضولي
fix	يصلح	deliver	يُوْصِل - يُسَلِّم
faucet	حنفية - صنبور	look after	يعتني بـ - يهتم بـ

Language

This – That – These – Those

This is ▶▶▶ هذا - هذه (للمفرد القريب)

▶ This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

That is ▶▶▶ ذلك - تلك (للمفرد البعيد)

▶ That's the water dripping from the faucet.

These are ▶▶▶ هؤلاء (للجمع القريب)

▶ These are the plumber's tools.

Those are ▶▶▶ أولئك (للجمع البعيد)

▶ Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

Pronunciation & Math

Syllable المقطع

- الكلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية تتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر، والمقطع هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت حرف متحرك واحد. لاحظ عدد المقاطع في الكلمات الآتية:

teach.er	2	plumb.er	2
ar.chi.tect	3	me.chan.ic	3
el.ec.tri.cian	4	doc.tor	2

Stress الضغط (التشديد)

- التشديد هو أن نُظْهِر أو نُمَيِّز أو نُبْرِز مقطع معين في الكلمة في النطق أكثر من غيره.
- لاحظ المقطع الذي يكون عليه التشديد في الكلمات الآتية:

<u>plumb</u>.er	<u>den</u>.tist
<u>teach</u>.er	me.<u>chan</u>.ic
<u>build</u>.er	<u>doc</u>.tor

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fix	يصلح	fixed	like	يحب	liked
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	love	يحب	loved
wait	ينتظر	waited	hope	يأمل - يتمنى	hoped
need	يحتاج	needed	arrive	يَصِل	arrived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot	take out	يُخرِج	took out
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove	put out	يُطفئ	put out

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
deliver	يُوْصِل - يُسَلِّم	delivered	travel	يسافر	traveled
repair	يصلح	repaired	touch	يلمس	touched
drip	ينقط	dripped	control	يتحكم	controlled
collect	يجمع	collected	practice	يمارس - يتدرب	practiced
work	يعمل	worked	study	يَدْرُس - يذاكر	studied

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained	call	يتصل	called
start	يبدأ	started	carry	يحمل	carried
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	change	يُغَيِّر	changed

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	use	يستعمل - يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	choose	يختار	chose

Dictation:

حنفية - صنبور	....	سباك	....
قمامة	....	كهربائي	....
....	mail carrier	ميكانيكي	....
....	garbage collector	سائق أتوبيس	....
....	parcel	وظيفة	....
....	messy	أنبوبة - ماسورة	....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصلح	....	forget	....
يأمل - يتمنى	....	take out	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

فني كهرباء	كهرباء ....
مقابلة (صحفية)	(شيء) كهربائي ....
repair shop	كُبس النور (بريزة) ....
speed of light	فيشة - يضع الفيشة ....
wet hands	وميض ....
close to	البرق ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يعمل	....
يلمس	....

Present	Past
deliver	....
travel	....

Dictation:

مكعبات	....	مِفَك	....
رحلة	....	عروسة لعبة - دُمية	....
....	**safety**	مُعلِّم	....
....	**curious**	طبيب أسنان	....
....	**mathematician**	مهندس معماري	....
....	**experiment (v)**	شريط قياس	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يبدأ	....
يتصل	....

Present	Past
explain	....
learn	....

Lessons 4&5

Dictation:

نقاط	....	مميزات	....
ألم في الظهر	....	عيوب	....
....	**get a lot of exercise**	قائمة	....
....	**wake up**	تقرير	....
....	**take away**	طقس	....
....	**bring**	ثقيل	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يستعمل - يستخدم	....
يعتني بـ	....

Present	Past
wake up	....
choose	....

Revision on Unit 6
What do you do?

Vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
education	التعليم	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج
transportation	النقل	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
farming	الزراعة	energy sources	مصادر الطاقة
fishing	الصيد	renewable	متجدد
industry	صناعة	non-renewable	غير متجدد
librarian	أمين مكتبة	oil	بترول
farmer	فلاح	coal	فحم
fisherman	صياد	gas	غاز
library	مكتبة	wood	خشب
factory	مصنع	engine	مُحَرِّك - موتور
materials	مواد خام	surprised	مندهش
lovely	جميل	hard work	عمل شاق
cut down	يقطع	advice	نصيحة

Language

- What do you do?
- I'm a fisherman. I catch fish.
- I'm a farmer. I grow oranges.

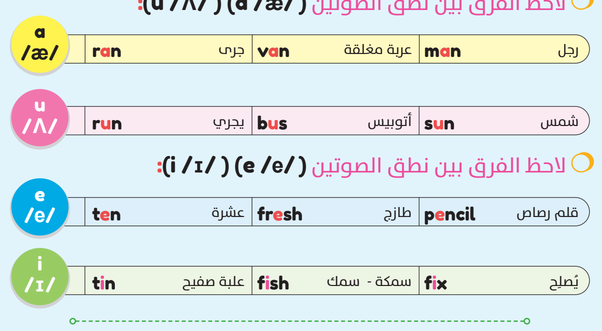
The prefix "dis..." البادئة

disagree	يرفض	**dis**appointed	مُحْبَط
disappear	يختفي	**dis**obey	يعصي
dislike	لا يحب		

Pronunciation & Math

Sound discrimination الفرق بين نطق الأصوات

لاحظ الفرق بين نُطْق الصوتين (a /æ/) (u /ʌ/):



A prime number (العدد الأولي)

- العدد الأولي: هو العدد الذي يمكن قسمته على نفسه وعلى الرقم "1" فقط مثل:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 19, 23, 41

- ملحوظة: العددان "0-1" لا يعتبران أعدادًا أولية.

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pick	يلتقط - يقطف	picked	add	يضيف	added
explain	يشرح	explained	connect	يربط - يُوَصِّل	connected
help	يساعد	helped	sound	يبدو	sounded
need	يحتاج	needed	look after	يعتني بـ	looked after

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch	يصطاد - يمسك	caught	buy	يشتري	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	find	يجد	found
grow	يزرع	grew	know	يعرف	knew
give	يعطي	gave	come back	يعود - يرجع	came back
send	يرسل	sent	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
tell	يخبر	told	go out	يخرج	went out

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate	cut down	يقطع	cut down
give	يعطي	gave	run out	ينفد	ran out

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	disagree	يرفض	disagreed
want	يريد	wanted	dislike	لا يحب - يكره	disliked
fix	يصلح	fixed	disobey	يعصي	disobeyed
pass	يجتاز	passed	disappear	يختفي	disappeared
worry	يَقْلَق	worried	disappoint	يُحْبِط	disappointed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove	hear	يسمع	heard
see	يرى	saw	stand	يقف	stood
teach	يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught	give	يُعطي	gave

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
answer	يجيب	answered	respect	يحترم	respected
ask	يسأل	asked	listen	يستمع	listened
need	يحتاج	needed	encourage	يشجع	encouraged

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
teach	يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught	get off	ينزل من (مَرْكَبَة)	got off
throw	يرمي - يلقي	threw	put	يضع	put

Lesson 1

Dictation:

مرشد	....	السياحة	....
صياد	....	الزراعة	....
....	**transportation**	الصيد	....
....	**nutrients**	صناعة	....
....	**hotel**	التعليم	....
....	**librarian**	مزارع - فلاح	....

Verbs

Present	Past
go out	....
come back	....

Present	Past
.... يصطاد - يمسك	....
.... يلتقط - يقطف	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

....	طاقة شمسية	....	غاز
....	طاقة الأمواج	....	خشب
....	طاقة الرياح	**energy sources**	....
....	متجددة	**non-renewable**	....
....	بترول	**grew bigger**	....
....	فحم	**mango seed**	....

Verbs

Present		Past
....	يعطي	....
....	يأكل	....

Present		Past
cut down	....	....
run out	....	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

قلم رصاص	....	مُحرِّك - موتور	....
يحصل على	....	جميل	....
....	**simple problem**	مُنْدَهِش - متفاجئ	....
....	**fresh fish**	أتوبيس	....
....	**sun**	عربة مغلقة	....
....	**disappointed**	علبة صفيح	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يُعَلِّم	....
يقود (مَرْكَبَة) - يسوق	....

Present	Past
disapper	....
see	....

Dictation:

شخص بالغ	....	صبور	....
طيب	....	مثير	....
....	hard work	أفكار	....
....	show respect	نصيحة	....
....	ready	بعناية	....
....	get off the bus	يُشَجِّع	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يُجِيب	....
يلقي - يرمي	....

Present	Past
listen	....
need	....



هدية كتاب **Step Ahead** لطلاب الصف الرابع بالإجابات النموذجية

المراجعة النهائية استعدادًا لامتحان نصف العام طبقًا لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة

Revision On Unit (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

raise – grow – lunch – farmers – country

Egyptian ❶ .... are very clever. Lots of the food we eat every day comes from our ❷ .... We ❸ .... rice, tomatoes and onions in Egypt. Egyptian farmers ❹ .... chickens, ducks, cows, goats, sheep and many other animals. Egyptian farmers produce many things we buy at the market every day.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

live – catch – cheese – grow – governorate

The land in Damietta ❶ .... is rich in nutrients. The farmers can ❷ .... rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen ❸ .... thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati ❹ .... is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

walk – healthy – watermelon – fruits – milkshake

I think I'm ❶ .... I do a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, I ❷ .... to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite ❸ .... are bananas and ❹ .... My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

competition – emperor – seed – grow – palace

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the ❶ .... He lived in a beautiful palace. One day the emperor said, "There will be a ❷ .... I will give a seed to each gardener. The one who can ❸ .... the most beautiful plant from the ❹ .... will be the next emperor."

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. We should eat (unhealthy - candy - healthy - sweet) food.
2. Egyptian farmers (produce - promise - practice - buy) many things we eat every day.
3. We have (breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper) in the afternoon.
4. Fishermen (grow - keep - raise - catch) fish from the sea.
5. In a (test - competition - farming - exam), we try to win.
6. We have (supper - breakfast - lunch - dinner) in the evening.
7. The land near the Nile is rich in (water - nutrients - fish - rocks).
8. Egyptian farmers raise (chickens - tomatoes - sugar cane - potatoes).
9. Mangoes and grapes are (drinks - candies - vegetables - fruit).
10. Egyptian farmers grow (cows - goats - rice - chickens).
11. He doesn't lie. He is (unkind - honest - hungry - angry).
12. We have (breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper) in the morning.
13. The farmers can (grow - raise - plant - seed) cows on their farms.
14. We get (onions - eggs - rice - milk) from chickens.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I like fruit.
2. He .... (painted) his house. This means he painted it again.
3. I eat vegetables .... (but) I exercise.
4. Nada .... (cleaned) her bike. This means she cleaned it again.
5. I drink cola, ... (and) I want to drink more water.
6. The chef .... (made) rice. This means he made it again.
7. I play basketball .... (but) I play football in the park.
8. Shaimaa .... (did) her homework. This means she did it again.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. my cousin judy and i play video games on tuesday

   ▶ ....

2. does talia come from egypt

   ▶ ....

3. do you think you're healthy, judy

   ▶ ....

4. the most important man in china was the emperor

   ▶ ....

Revision On Unit (2)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangerous – helpful – important – cute – fox

Animals and birds are different. Not all animals and birds are ❶ .... Some animals are ❷ .... like crocodiles. Spiders are scary. Snakes are scary and ugly. But all animals are very ❸ .... They are all ❹ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

desert – animals – legs – sand – strong

I love camels. They are very important ❶ .... in Egypt. They are ❷ ....and they can carry people and things across the ❸ .... They are tall animals, with thin ❹ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kind – stronger – hungry – strong – scared

The bear is a strong animal. It is ❶ .... than the pelican. They are both very ❷ .... They see a big, juicy fish. The pelican is ❸ .... of the bear because it's very strong, but the bear is very ❹ ...., and it says, "I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish."

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coats – horns – protect – gazelles – leaves

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, ❶ .... and plants to eat. They have big ears and long ❷ .... They have yellow-white ❸ .... which ❹ .... them from the sun.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. It's a (helpful - dangerous - scary - cute) animal. It helps to control the number of these small animals.
2. It's hot in the desert during the (day - night - morning - evening).
3. The elephant is (small - huge - few - little).
4. Bears have sharp (claws - beaks - feathers - hair) on their feet.
5. Snakes are (cute - beautiful - nice - dangerous).
6. Rhim gazelles have big ears and long (teeth - horns - coats - legs) on their heads.
7. The crocodile is a (nice - cute - scary - small) animal.
8. Camels have (little - small - large - tiny), flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
9. The pelican has one (claw - beak - wing - ear) to eat with.
10. The pelican has two (wings - beaks - fur - heads) to fly with.
11. (Crocodiles - Spiders - Horses - Camels) live in rivers and lakes.
12. The (desert - farm - sea - river) is a very hot place.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A mouse is .... (small) than an elephant.
2. How .... (heavy) is the camel? - 1.4 – 1.8 m.
3. A snake is .... (dangerous) than a fox.
4. Dogs are .... (thin) than elephants.
5. How .... (tall) is it? - 380 - 550 kg.

6 Ice cream is .... (delicious) than butter.

7 Parrots are .... (noisy) than spiders.

8 How .... (long) is it? - 88 kph.

9 The red flower is .... (beautiful) than the white flower.

10 I think cats are .... (nice) than dogs.

11 How .... (fast) does it live? - 25 - 30 years.

7 Punctuate the following:

1 mom, sara and tarek like animals

▶ ....

2 which animal does adel like

▶ ....

3 alexandria is a beautiful egyptian city

▶ ....

Revision On Unit (3)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shoot – tomato – soil – germination – sunlight

The 1 .... process is awesome. We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs 2 .... and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the 3 .... Then it grows a 4 .... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

water – rain – lakes – agricultural – habitat

Farmers work in the 1 .... habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near rivers and 2 ....need a lot of 3 .... In the desert 4 ...., there is not much rain. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Papyrus – weather – river – Egyptians – plant

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient 1 .... used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. 2 .... needs a lot of water and warm 3 .... to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the 4 ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. There isn't much rain in the (agricultural - desert - sea - lake) habitat.
2. The (roots - leaves - flowers - branches) grow under the soil.

3. We plant the (seed - soil - leaf - flower) and the plant grows.
4. The (soil - flower - tree - shoot) is a small plant.
5. A billion is a (hundred - thousand - ten - twenty) million.
6. Trees have a lot of green (leaves - seeds - shoots - roots).
7. She has to be (careful - useful - helpful - careless) with the knife.
8. The roots grow under the (seeds - flowers - soil - leaves).
9. Farmers work in the (desert habitat - seas - rivers and lakes - agricultural habitat).
10. We love (careful - careless - lonely - helpful) people because they help us.
11. Plants near (rivers - farms - desert - fields) need a lot of water.
12. There is not much rain in the (agricultural habitat - desert habitat - rivers - lakes).
13. The seed (germinates - closes - dies - stops) and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
14. Plants near (desert - land - farms - lakes) need a lot of water.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My cat is the .... (big) on our street.
2. He is a .... (care) driver.
3. I think maize is .... (delicious) of these three plants.
4. My city is .... (nicer) place to live.
5. This is a .... (color) painting.

6 I think a rose is .... (beautiful) flower.

7 My grandpa is very .... (help).

8 I have .... (heavy) suitcase.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 ancient egyptians used papyrus to make paper

▶ ....

2 lucas lives on a farm in the united states

▶ ....

3 why does uncle ali grow plants in the balcony

▶ ....

4 where does jana live

▶ ....

5 they go to the farm in september

▶ ....

Revision On Unit (4)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rock – desert – cloth – tent – houseboat

My friend and her family live on a (1) .... It's small, but she loves living on water. In the (2) ...., some people live in a (3) .... This home is made of (4) ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

between – in – behind – next – village

My name's Zain. I live in a (1) .... next to the Nile. I live (2) .... a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is (3) .... a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees (4) .... the house.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

city – kind – food – supermarket – fresh

This is Mona. She works at the (1) .... near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy (2) .... Mona checks the food is (3) .... She helps us when we can't find something. She is very (4) .... and happy.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tourists – restaurants – beautiful – town – beach

In Hurghada, there's a (1) .... and there are lots of cool stores and (2) .... There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of (3) .... go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh, which has an old (4) .... and a new town, is in Hurghada. The old town has some beautiful houses.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. That village is (in front - next - behind - between) to a big city.
2. She lives in a big (city - farm - village - tent). It's noisy and polluted.
3. The ball is (between - under - next - in front) the table.
4. I sleep in my (bedroom - living room - dining room - kitchen).
5. My house is (under - in - in front - between) two shops.
6. We live in a/an (house - apartment - tent - houseboat) on the fourth floor.
7. The chair is (behind - in - on - between) the door.
8. We send letters at the (hospital - shopping mall - post office - school).
9. They live in a (hotel - tent - garden - houseboat). It's made of cloth.
10. The park is (between - next to - in front - behind) of the museum.
11. We watch TV in the (bathroom - living room - dining room - kitchen).
12. The book is (between - front of - in - next) the bag.
13. They live in a/an (houseboat - apartment - house - tent) with a garden.
14. The bag is (between - in front - next - on) the desk.
15. He lives on a (houseboat - cave - tent - hotel). He loves living on water.
16. There's a kite (above - under - in front - between) our house.
17. She goes on (safaris - deserts - bazaars - stores) to see animals in their natural habitat.
18. I buy clothes and shoes at the (shopping mall - post office - school - office).

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My house is .... (next) the tall house and the tree.
2. The couch is .... (on) the living room.
3. The kitchen is .... (in front) to the living room.
4. The hospital is .... (next) of the school.
5. Look! A plane is flying .... (on) our house.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. where are mom and talia

▶ ....

2. dad speaks english and chinese with the tourists

▶ ....

3. i live in a village next to the nile

▶ ....

4. how does rana help the others

▶ ....

Revision On Unit (5)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electrician – mail carrier – bus driver – garbage collector – mechanic

A ❶ .... takes away all the trash, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A ❷ .... delivers our parcels. But you also need help when you leave the house. You need a ❸ .... to fix the car or a ❹ .... to take you to school.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plugs – socket – electrical – electricity – dry

Electricity is very important in our lives. It's also very dangerous. We should use ❶ .... safely. So, never touch anything ❷ .... with wet hands. Always make sure your hands are ❸ .... before you touch anything electrical. Never put anything into a ❹ ...., only use plugs.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mail carrier – job – list – weather – exercise

Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the ❶ .... is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of ❷ .... They also speak to a lot of people. This is a nice part of the ❸ .... Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the ❹ ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (doctor - teacher - vet - dentist) looks after our teeth.
2. A (garbage collector - mail carrier - bus driver - plumber) takes away the

trash.

3 The (architect - mathematician - dentist - doctor) works with numbers and math problems.

4 The (mechanic - plumber - farmer - electrician) should know how to work safely with electricity.

5 We shouldn't (save - waste - control - keep) electricity.

6 The (bus driver - mail carrier - garbage collector - mechanic) drives to many different places and helps lots of people.

7 When you leave a room, turn (on - of - off - down) the lights.

8 A (garbage collector - plumber - bus driver - mail carrier) carries the letters and parcels to us.

9 In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of (lightning - fire - electricity - storm).

10 You need a (builder - plumber - mechanic - bus driver) to fix the car or the bus.

11 If you're not watching TV, (turn on - switch on - plug - unplug) it.

12 A (mechanic - mathematician - electrician - plumber) fixes pipes and faucets.

13 Never put anything into a (wire - desk - bag - socket), only use plugs.

14 If we get an electric (shock - socket - plug - wire), we can't control our bodies.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 .... (These) is the socket the electrician is fixing.

2 .... (That) are the mail carrier's parcels.

3 .... (Those) is the water dripping from the faucet.

4 .... (This) are the plumber's tools.

5 These .... (be) the faucets in our bathrooms.

6 That .... (be) the mechanic who fixed my car.

7 This .... (be) the garbage collector who collects our trash.

8 Those .... (be) the plumbers who came to our house.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 lara, talia and amir are cousins

▶ ....

2 what s dalia doing now

▶ ....

3 my aunt is a mail carrier in the united states

▶ ....

4 who does tamer call when his fan doesn't work

▶ ....

Revision On Unit (6)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy – education – job – history – tourism

I'm a guide. I work in the ❶ .... industry. People come to my country, and it's my ❷ .... to explain the ❸ .... and tell the tourists lots of interesting stories. I'm a teacher. I work in the ❹ .... industry. I work hard to help my students.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oil – non-renewable – renewable – electricity – sources

We are using more and more ❶ .... We can make electricity from many different energy ❷ .... Today, 80% of electricity comes from ❸ .... sources. These are coal, gas, and ❹ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

polite – older – show – poor – respect

When you show ❶ .... , you are kind and ❷ .... You talk to someone in the same way you want them to talk to you. We show everyone respect. We show respect to younger people. We show respect to ❸ .... people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and ❹ .... people.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I respect the (bus driver - plumber - teacher - cleaner). I don't throw trash.
2. The librarian works in the (farming - transportation - tourism - education) industry.

3 The solar energy is (renewable - non-renewable - wind - wave) energy.

4 The (librarian - cleaner - plumber - farmer) grows and looks after trees.

5 The (solar energy - wave energy - wind energy - fire energy) comes from the sun.

6 The fisherman works in the (tourism - farming - fishing - education) industry.

7 The guide works in the (education - tourism - transportation - farming) industry.

8 The (solar energy - wave energy - moon energy - wind energy) comes from the wind.

9 The (farmer - fisherman - teacher - cleaner) catches fish and sells them in the market.

10 I'm a (teacher - geologist - guide - principal). I work in the tourism industry.

11 The (storm energy - solar energy - wave energy - wind energy) comes from the sea.

12 The farmer works in the (energy - fishing - farming - tourism) industry.

13 The (principal - teacher - guide - librarian) works in the tourism industry.

14 The wind energy is (renewable - non-renewable - solar energy - wave energy).

15 The (guide - fishermen - principal - farmer) works in the education industry.

16 (Coal - Wave energy - Wind energy - Solar energy) is a non-renewable source of energy.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I'm sad when I .... (agree) with my dad.

2 The boy is .... (appointed). He didn't pass the test.

3 She .... (likes) ice cream. She doesn't want it.

4 I'm sorry because I .... (obeyed) my mom.

5 The rabbit .... (appeared). I can't see it.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what does the old man sell

▶ ....

2 when tourists arrive in egypt, they need a hotel

▶ ....

3 sara and malak are sisters

▶ ....

Model Answers

Revision on Unit (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 farmers 2 county 3 grow 4 raise

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 governorate 2 grow 3 catch 4 governorate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 healthy 2 walk 3 fruits 4 watermelon

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 emperor 2 competition 3 grow 4 seed

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 healthy 2 produce 3 lunch 4 catch 5 competition
6 dinner 7 nutrients 8 chickens 9 fruit 10 rice
11 honest 12 breakfast 13 raise 14 eggs

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 but 2 repainted 3 and 4 recleaned
5 but 6 remade 7 and 8 redid

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1 My cousin Judy and I play video games on Tuesday.
2 Does Talia come from Egypt?
3 Do you think you're healthy, Judy?
4 The most important man in China was the emperor.

Revision on Unit (2)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 cute 2 dangerous 3 important 4 helpful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 animals 2 strong 3 desert 4 legs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 stronger 2 scared 3 hungry 4 kind

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 leaves 2 horns 3 coats 4 protect

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 helpful 2 day 3 huge 4 claws 5 dangerous
6 horns 7 scary 8 large 9 beak 10 wings
11 Crocodiles 12 desert

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 smaller 2 tall 3 more dangerous 4 thinner 5 heavy
6 more delicious 7 noisier 8 fast 9 more beautiful 10 nicer
11 long

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1 Mom, Sara and Tarek like animals.
2 Which animal does Adel like?
3 Alexandria is a beautiful Egyptian city.

Revision on Unit (3)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 germination 2 sunlight 3 soil 4 shoot

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 agricultural 2 lakes 3 water 4 habitat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 Egyptians 2 Papyrus 3 weather 4 river

4 Choose the correct answer:

1 desert 2 roots 3 seed 4 shoot 5 thousand
6 leaves 7 careful 8 soil 9 agricultural habitat 10 helpful
11 rivers 12 desert habitat 13 germinates 14 lakes

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 biggest 2 careful 3 the most delicious 4 the nicest
5 colorful 6 the most beautiful 7 helpful 8 the heaviest

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
2 Lucas lives on a farm in the United States.
3 Why does uncle Ali grow plants in the balcony?
4 Where does Jana live?
5 They go to the farm in September.

Revision on Unit (4)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 houseboat 2 desert 3 tent 4 cloth

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 village 2 in 3 between 4 behind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 supermarket 2 food 3 fresh 4 kind

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1 beach 2 restaurants 3 tourists 4 town

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 next 2 city 3 under 4 bedroom 5 between
6 apartment 7 behind 8 post office 9 tent 10 in front
11 living room 12 in 13 house 14 on 15 houseboat
16 above 17 safaris 18 shopping mall

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 between 2 in 3 next to 4 in front 5 above

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Where are mom and Talia?
2. Dad speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.
3. I live in a village next to the Nile.
4. How does Rana help the others?

Revision on Unit (5)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. garbage collector
2. mail carrier
3. mechanic
4. bus driver

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. electricity
2. electrical
3. dry
4. socket

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. weather
2. exercise
3. job
4. mail carrier

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. dentist
2. garbage collector
3. mathematician
4. electrician
5. waste
6. bus driver
7. off
8. mail carrier
9. lightning
10. mechanic
11. unplug
12. plumber
13. socket
14. shock

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. This(That)
2. Those(These)
3. That(This)
4. These (Those)
5. are
6. is
7. is
8. are

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Lara, Talia and Amir are cousins.
2. What's Dalia doing now?
3. My aunt is a mail carrier in the United States.
4. Who does Tamer call when his fan doesn't work?

Revision on Unit (6)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. tourism 2. job 3. history 4. education

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. electricity 2. sources 3. non-renewable 4. oil

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1. respect 2. polite 3. older 4. poor

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. cleaner
2. education
3. renewable
4. farmer
5. solar energy
6. fishing
7. tourism
8. wind energy
9. fisherman
10. guide
11. wave energy
12. farming
13. guide
14. renewable
15. principal
16. Coal

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. disagree
2. disappointed
3. dislikes
4. disobeyed
5. disappeared

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. What does the old man sell?
2. When tourists arrive in Egypt, they need a hotel.
3. Sara and Malak are sisters.



هدية كتاب **Step Ahead** لطلاب الصف الرابع بالإجابات النموذجية

السؤال المُضاف حديثًا طبقًا لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة
وطبعًا زي ما عودناكم، السؤال مغطي كل أجزاء المنهج

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I .... (feels) good.
2. Lunch .... (are) ready.
3. I think we .... (grows) rice in Egypt.
4. What meal .... (is) they having?
5. What .... (does) Egyptian farmers produce?
6. Where .... (be) Mom and Maged today?
7. Maged .... (think) that Egyptian food is yummy.
8. Let's .... (eating) lunch.

Lesson (2)

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you think you .... (be) healthy?
2. What healthy things do you .... (does)?
3. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
4. I don't drink cola .... (but) other unhealthy drinks.
5. I play basketball .... (but) I play football in the park.

6 Dad is a scientist, ... (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.

7 It's a very interesting place, ... (and) it's very hot sometimes.

8 I eat vegetables .... (but) I exercise.

9 I want to play football, ... (and) my leg hurts.

10 I love playing video games, ... (and) I only play them on Saturday.

Lesson (3)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Cheng .... (live) long ago in China.

2 Cheng........................ (were) very good at growing things in the past.

3 Cheng was very good at .... (look) after his garden long ago.

4 Cheng was very good .... (in) growing things.

5 Cheng worked very hard but the plant .... (doesn't) grow.

6 You will .... (being) the next emperor.

7 A palace is where an emperor .... (live).

8 In a competition someone tries to........................ (wins).

Lesson (4)

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The farmers can .... (grows) rice and wheat.

2 Fishermen .... (catches) thousands of fish in the sea.

3 Cows and goats .... (lives) in Damietta governorate.

4 Life .... (be) good in Damietta.

5 About one and a half million people.................................. (lives) in this part of Egypt.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. .... (Is) snakes and crocodiles important?
2. Spiders........................ (be) very helpful.
3. Farmers .... (likes) spiders.
4. Spiders .... (eats) insects.
5. Which animals .... (does) Mom, Tarek, and Sara not talk about?

Lesson (2)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What .... (does) you know about camels?
2. Camels .... (helps) people to cross the desert.
3. Camels .... (be) perfect for the desert.
4. We can .... (uses) their fur to make clothes.
5. Camels .... (has) large, flat feet.
6. Camels can .... (lives) a without water for a long time.
7. The horse .... (have) strong legs.
8. The horse .... (eat) grass.
9. Horses are faster .... (the) camels.
10. Camels are .... (heavy) than horses.
11. Camels live .... (long) than horses.
12. A mouse is .... (smallest) than an elephant.
13. A snake is .... (most) dangerous than a fox.

14 I think ice cream is .... (most) delicious than butter.

15 Crocodiles are more dangerous........................ (then) fish.

Lesson (3)

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The bear is .... (strong) than the pelican.

2 I'm .... (big) and stronger than you.

3 You are .... (kind) than all the other bears!

Lesson (4)

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Rhim gazelles .... (looks) very beautiful.

2 Rhim gazelles .... (doesn't) need to drink a lot of water.

3 Rhim gazelles .... (lives) in the Sahara Desert.

4 Rhim gazelles .... (has) big ears and long horns.

5 How .... (old) is a rhim gazelle's horn?

6 How .... (tall) does a rhim gazelle live?

7 What .... (does) rhim gazelles eat?

8 Why .... (be) rhim gazelles special?

Lesson (5)

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The fennec fox .... (live) in the deserts of North Africa.

2 The fennec fox is .... (small) than other foxes.

3 The fennec fox .... (need) big ears.

4 The fennec fox .... (eat) insects, lizards, and small mice.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Why .... (does) we grow plants?
2. Look! Our tomato plants are .... (grow) on the balcony.
3. Why .... (be) the tomatoes green?
4. How do we .... (grows) new tomatoes?
5. Tomatoes .... (has) seeds inside.
6. Ali .... (water) the plants every day.
7. Let's .... (having) chicken for lunch.
8. What are they .... (talk) about?

Lesson (2)

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A habitat is a place where living things .... (lives).
2. Farmers .... (grows) food for us to eat.
3. Plants near rivers and lakes .... (needs) a lot of water.
4. Plants that live in the desert .... (does) not need a lot of water.
5. Where do you .... (lives)?
6. How .... (tall) does the rose live?
7. How .... (big) is it? - Around 200g.
8. The rose is .... (tall) than the daisy.
9. My house is the .... (big) one in the street.
10. My city is the .... (nice) place to live.
11. I have the .... (heavy) suitcase.

12 What's the .... (more) beautiful flower?

Lesson (3)

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Forty years ago, the land .... (be) very dry.
2. Life .... (be) very difficult long ago.
3. They .... (plant) trees and flowers last week.
4. They .... (use) plants to make the land green a year ago.
5. Why .... (do) grandparents plant seeds yesterday?
6. Why do you think Lucas .... (liked) the farm?
7. Why .... (are) it important to turn desert land into farmland?
8. Egypt .... (want) to plant more than 100 million palm trees a cross the country.

Lesson (4)

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The seed .... (germinate) and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
2. The shoot grows above the soil. It .... (get) taller.
3. After about 4 months, the sunflower .... (open) and faces the sun.
4. Finally, the sunflower .... (die) and drops its seeds.

Lesson (5)

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What does the plant .... (needs)?
2. Papyrus .... (need) a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.
3. Papyrus .... (grow) in the Nile Delta near the river.
4. Ancient Egyptians .... (use) papyrus to make paper.
5. Ancient Egyptians .... (make) sandals and baskets from papyrus.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where .... (does) you live?
2. Where .... (be) Mom and Talia today?
3. Which .... (are) your favorite room?
4. I can .... (relaxes) and do my homework quietly in my bedroom.
5. Can you .... (helping) me organize the kitchen?

Lesson (2)

16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My name .... (be) Zain.
2. I .... (lives) in a house with my family.
3. Our house is not the .... (big) in the village.
4. It is .... (behind) a yellow house and a brown house.
5. The tent is .... (between) to the car?
6. The couch is .... (on) the living room.
7. My house is .... (next to) the tall house and the tree.
8. There are 4 chairs and a table .... (on) the balcony.
9. I .... (buys) food at the supermarket.
10. Ahmed .... (learn) lots of things at school.

Lesson (3)

17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. .... (Turns) right.

2 .... (Turns) left.

3 .... (Goes) straight ahead.

4 It's .... (in) the corner.

5 Excuse me, ... (when) is the post office?

6 Dina is .... (go) to visit her friend Fareeda.

7 I'm so happy you are .... (come) to my house today.

8 My house is .... (next) the supermarket and the school.

9 Sherif .... (like) the summer very much.

10 He .... (speak) English and Chinese with the tourists.

11 The small child .... (fall) into the river last week.

12 Why .... (be) it important to help others?

Lesson (4)

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Hurghada .... (be) in the east of Egypt.

2 In Hurghada, there .... (be) lots of interesting things to do.

3 Hurghada .... (have) some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

4 How many paragraphs does Mariam .... (writes)?

5 Why does Mariam .... (uses) bold text?

Lesson (5)

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 This .... (be) Mona.

2 Mona .... (work) at the supermarket every day.

3 Mona .... (check) the food is fresh.

4 She .... (help) us when we can't find something.

5 She .... (be) kind and happy.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where .... (do) he work?
2. .... (Does) you like your job?
3. Sometimes it .... (be) wet and messy.
4. I .... (has) to fix pipes and faucets.
5. I .... (want) to be a bus driver when I was young.
6. I was much better at .... (fix) pipes and faucets than cars.
7. I love .... (make) things work!
8. I forgot to take .... (up) the trash!

Lesson (2)

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Is it near .... (and) far?
2. That mail carrier is .... (deliver) letters.
3. .... (This) mechanics work in the repair shop.
4. This bus .... (be) taking me to school.
5. .... (That) drivers are driving the new buses.

6 .... (These) is the socket the electrician is fixing.

7 .... (Those) is the water dripping from the faucet.

8 How can we .... (uses) electricity safely?

9 This .... (be) the socket the electrician is fixing.

10 Those .... (be) the mail carrier's parcels.

11 That .... (be) the water dripping from the faucet.

12 These .... (be) the plumber's tools.

Lesson (3)

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Lara, Talia and Amir .... (be) cousins.

2 When Lara .... (be) a child, she loved to experiment.

3 When Talia was a baby, she .... (plays) with blocks.

4 When she was older, she .... (starting) making things.

5 Amir .... (is) always very patient and he liked helping people.

6 Big brothers can .... (got) angry at their little brothers.

7 Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir .... (be) all adults.

8 Lara .... (be) an electrician.

9 Amir is .... (an) teacher.

10 What .... (do) you like to play when you were little?

Lesson (4)

23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My name .... (be) Sherifa.
2. We .... (be) talking about the good and bad things about different jobs today.
3. My aunt .... (be) a mail carrier in America.
4. I .... (talk) to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.
5. Mail carriers .... (be) outside all day.
6. Mail carriers .... (walks) all day.
7. Everyone likes .... (meet) the mail carrier.
8. My aunt .... (start) work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Lesson (5)

24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is a report about people who .... (helps) us.
2. Plumbers .... (connects) the pipes so that we have water.
3. Cleaners keep the school .... (cleans).
4. The mechanic .... (fix) the cars.
5. Garbage collectors .... (takes) away our garbage.
6. The bus driver .... (bring) the children to school.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What do you .... (did) on Friday?
2. I .... (be) a fisherman.
3. I .... (woke) up very early every day.
4. I go out on my boat and .... (catches) fish?
5. A farmer .... (grow) oranges.
6. A farmer .... (look) after the trees and gives them water and nutrients.
7. A guide .... (working) in the tourism industry.
8. The librarian...................... (to work) in a school library.
9. I .... (helps) children find the information they need.
10. I .... (sold) my fish in the market every day.

Lesson (2)

26 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Sara and Malak .... (be) sisters?
2. The children .... (play) in the park yesterday.
3. Let's .... (cutting) down my tree.
4. I can .... (sells) the wood.
5. She cut the tree and she.......................... (sells) the wood.
6. .... (Doesn't) worry.
7. We .... (makes) electricity from energy sources.
8. This mango seed will .... (growing) into a big tree.

Lesson (3)

27 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. On day, an old fisherman .... (be) in front of my house.
2. He couldn't .... (starts) his van.
3. I can .... (fixing) this problem.
4. What does the old man .... (selling)?
5. How many fish does the old man .... (gives) to mom?
6. You can .... (has) fun in the sun.
7. He .... (selling) fresh fish from the river every day.

Lesson (4)

28 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What do you want to .... (doing)?
2. I .... (wants) to be a teacher.
3. For a teacher, every day .... (be) different.
4. Students always .... (asks) surprising questions.
5. Teachers .... (needs) to be very patient.
6. A good teacher is always ready to .... (learning).
7. Everyone in the class .... (knowing) different things.
8. Why does the writer .... (wanted) to be a teacher?

Lesson (5)

29 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. How do we .... (shows) respect to the people around us?
2. I respect the cleaner. I .... (doesn't) throw trash.
3. I respect the teacher. I .... (listening) to him carefully.
4. Ali says thank you when he .... (get) off the bus.
5. Heba respects the librarian. She .... (put) her books back on the shelf.

Model Answers

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 feel 2 is 3 grow 4 are
5 do 6 are 7 thinks 8 eat

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 are 2 do 3 but 4 and
5 and 6 and 7 but 8 and
9 but 10 but

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 lived 2 was 3 looking 4 at
5 didn't 6 be 7 lives 8 win

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 grow 2 catch 3 live 4 is 5 live

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Are 2 Are 3 like 4 eat 5 do

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 help 3 are 4 use 5 have
6 live 7 has 8 eats 9 than 10 heavier
11 longer 12 smaller 13 more 14 more 15 than

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 stronger 2 bigger 3 kinder

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 look 2 don›t 3 live 4 have
5 long 6 long 7 do 8 are

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 lives 2 smaller 3 neesds 4 eats

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 growing 3 are 4 grow
5 have 6 waters 7 have 8 talking

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 live 2 grow 3 need 4 do 5 live
6 long 7 heavy 8 taller 9 biggest 10 nicest
11 heaviest 12 most

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 was 2 was 3 planted 4 used
5 did 6 like 7 is 8 wants

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 germinates 2 gets 3 opens 4 dies

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 need 2 needs 3 grows 4 used 5 made

15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 are 3 is 4 relax 5 help

16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is 2 live 3 biggest 4 between 5 next
6 in 7 between 8 in 9 buy 10 learns

17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Turn 2 Turn 3 Go 4 on 5 where
6 going 7 coming 8 between 9 likes 10 speaks
11 fell 12 is

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is 2 are 3 has 4 write 5 use

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is 2 works 3 checks 4 helps 5 is

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 does 2 do 3 is 4 have
5 wanted 6 fixing 7 making 8 out

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 or 2 delivers 3 These 4 is 5 Those
6 This 7 That 8 use 9 is 10 are
11 is 12 are

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 are 2 was 3 played 4 started 5 was

6 get 7 are 8 is 9 a 10 did

23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is 2 are 3 is 4 talked
5 are 6 walk 7 meeting 8 starts

24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 help 2 connect 3 clean 4 fixes 5 take
6 brings

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 am 3 wake 4 catch 5 grows
6 looks 7 works 8 works 9 help 10 sell

26 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 are 2 played 3 cut 4 sell
5 sold 6 Don't 7 make 8 grow

27 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 was 2 start 3 fix 4 sell
5 give 6 have 7 sells

28 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 want 3 is 4 ask
5 need 6 learn 7 knows 8 want

29 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 show 2 don't 3 listen 4 gets 5 puts



كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين

مثلا ازاى نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9



خطوة 1

خطوة 2
اختيار اسم الطابعة بتاعتك

خطوة 3
كتابة الصفحات المراد طباعتها
نكتب رقم 4 ثم نكتب الشرطة دي – ثم نكتب 9

خطوة 4
اختيار نوع الورق

خطوة 5
اختيار A4

خطوة 6

حمل الان

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (2)









First term Questions Bank



Question 01 Listen and circle the correct answer



Listen and circle the correct answer :

1 - They go walking in the................
(farm - street - park - desert).
2 - Yesser loves ....
(pizza - pasta - cola - burgers).
3- Yesser's dad is a....................
(teacher - farmer - doctor - scientist).
4 - They go walking every......................
(day - weekend - month - night).

2

Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - Lara works at the .... near her house.
(supermarket – bank – hospital – school)
2 - My family and I see her every................
(month – week – day – year)
3 – Lara checks that the food is..................
(fresh – healthy – unhealthy – bad)
4 – Lara is very kind and ....
(lazy – helpful – clever - careful



Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - Horses have large and beautiful ....
(legs – ears – eyes- hands)
2 - They are .... than camels.
(faster – slower- bigger - smaller)
3 - They have .... teeth .
(weak – strong – big – small)
4 - They eat grass and drink fresh..................
(milk - juice – rain – water)



4

Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - I want to be a..................
(mail carrier – teacher – vet – doctor)
2 - Mail carriers work...........all day.
(indoors – abroad – inside – outside)
3 - They get a lot of ....
(food – exercise – fats – money)
4 - They also .... many people.
(talk – hate – meet – love)

5

Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 . ... are amazing .
(Monkeys – Camels – Foxes – Cows)
2 - They are beautiful, ...animals
(heavy – long – weak – strong)
3 – their .... is delicious.
(milk – water – juice – soup)
4 - We can use their..................to make clothes.
(fats – claws – milk – fur)

6

Listen and circle the correct answer :
1- Damietta is a..................
(mountain - governorate - country - village).
2 - Damietta's land is rich in ....
(nutrients - sweets - cheese - sugar).
3 - Farmers .... vegetables and fruits.
(grow - feed - eat - raise)
4 Fishermen .... fish in the sea.
(grow - catch - chase - raise)

7

Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - I live in an apartment with my...........................
(friends – teachers – family – classmates)
2 - I can relax and do my homework in my ....
(living room – bedroom – kitchen – balcony)
3 - I can see the whole street from the ....
(kitchen – bedroom - balcony– bathroom)
4 - I watch TV in the....................
(balcony – kitchen – bedroom - living room)

Question 02 — choose the correct answer

1. Our house is so old . we need to .... it .
   (a) Repaint (b) Recook (c) Reread (d) Rewrite
2. We use ....to make sugar .
   (a) onions (b) Watermelon (c) Sugarcane (d) grapes
3. A mail carrier .... Your letters .
   (a) connects (b) throws (c) delivers (d) puts
4. The .... can fly high in the sky .
   (a) bear (b) pelican (c) dog (d) cat
5. She always .... a pencil when she was little.
   (a) carry (b) carrying (c) carried (d) to carry
6. How .... is a horse? - It is about 459 kg.
   (a) long (b) heavy (c) happy (d) short
7. I like chicken .... I don't like chips .
   (a) but (b) and (c) so (d) because
8. The .... always carries a screwdriver when he works .
   (a) doctor (b) electrician (c) teacher (d) dentist
9. The yellow flower is .... than the red flower .
   (a) more beautiful (b) beautiful less (c) beautiful (d) tall
10. Elephants are ....than dogs.
    (a) thinner (b) big (c) bigger (d) biggest
11. Camels have large, flat ....so they can walk on the sand.
    (a) hands (b) feet (c) legs (d) teeth
12. She..........ice cream.
    (a) don't like (b) dislikes (c) like to (d) like
13. Never put anything into a .... only use plugs.
    (a) tape (b) box (c) bin (d) socket
14. The roots grow .... the soil.
    (a) next to (b) on (c) under (d) above







15. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
    - a) pink
    - b) green
    - c) blue
    - d) black
16. I sit .... Lara and seif
    - a) in
    - b) above
    - c) between
    - d) on
17. Domiati .... is very famous .
    - a) milk
    - b) cheese
    - c) guava
    - d) banana
18. ....catch fish in the sea .
    - a) farmers
    - b) Fishermen
    - c) doctors
    - d) Teachers
19. She loved to experiment , she was very ....
    - a) sad
    - b) Angry
    - c) curious
    - d) lazy
20. This .... my car
    - a) is
    - b) are
    - c) were
    - d) do
21. We ....the plant every day.
    - a) water
    - b) read
    - c) look
    - d) play
22. There is a cat in .... of the tree
    - a) behind
    - b) next
    - c) front
    - d) between
23. A / An .... Helps me in the library .
    - Vet
    - b) engineer
    - c) librarian
    - d) guide
24. Birds have one.................
    - a) wing
    - b) feather
    - c) beak
    - d) tooth
25. My grandpa taught me all................cars
    - a) of
    - b) around
    - c) off
    - d) about
26. I like playing tennis, ... I can't play well.
    - a) and
    - b) from
    - c) but
    - d) so
27. I explain the history to the tourists , I work in the .... Industry .
    - a) education
    - b) fishing
    - c) farming
    - d) tourism
28. They live in a .... they enjoy the fresh air of the country .
    - a) city
    - b) town
    - c) village
    - d) lake
29. The Egyptian land is .... in nutrients.
    - a) poor
    - b) rich
    - c) bad
    - d) weak
30. I like grapes........... bananas
    - a) but
    - b) or
    - c) and
    - d) so



31) I respect the .... I don't throw trash .

(a) bus driver (b) Librarian (c) cleaner (d) teacher

32) A lot of .... visit Hurghada .

(a) tourists (b) thieves (c) clubs (d) computers

33) These .... my father's tools . He uses to fix things .

(a) are (b) is (c) am (d) was

34) If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an......

(a) electrician (b) mail carrier (c) bus driver (d) plumber

35) There is not much rain in the ....

(a) agricultural habitat (b) desert habitat (c) rivers (d) lakes

36) This .... is near my house . It sells good food .

(a) post office (b) living room (c) supermarket (d) balcony

37) The electricians connect..............so that we can use lights.

(a) bus (b) bag (c) garbage (d) electricity

38) A mail carrier delivers.................

(a) parcels (b) cars (c) trash (d) faucets

39) .... are very dangerous animals.

(a) Crocodiles (b) Cats (c) Pelicans (d) Birds

40) I eat vegetables .... exercise.

(a) so (b) and (c) or (d) but

41) We .... chickens in Egypt.

(a) produce (b) raise (c) grow (d) plant

42) I found.................. cat in the park..

(a) those (b) this (c) these (d) they

43) There's a plant .... The couch .

(a) in (b) next to (c) between (d) in front

44) Plants near .... need a lot of water .

(a) desert (b) farms (c) lakes (d) mountains

45) The park is .... The supermarket . I can't see it well .

(a) next (b) behind (c) between (d) in front

46) I want .... a mechanic .

(a) are (b) to be (c) being (d) is

47. We sometimes see a flash of.............in a storm.
    a) electricity b) shock c) lightning d) water
48. Tourists usually go on .... when they are in the Sahara desert .
    a) visits b) tents c) safaris d) games
49. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt .... the Red Sea .
    a) in b) at c) on d) to
50. The red box is .... the two rooms
    a) on b) between c) in front d) next
51. When dad..............young, he wanted to be a doctor.
    a) am b) is c) was d) were
52. There is a plant .... the sofa
    a) next b) behind c) front d) between
53. Plants need .... and water to grow.
    a) sunlight b) leaves c) fruit d) books
54. You can ride .... in the desert .
    a) lions b) dogs c) camels d) chickens
55. Never touch anything electrical with.....................hands.
    a) wet b) dry c) clever d) open
56. The..................... helps us to cross the desert .
    a) eagle b) bear c) camel d) cat
57. Snakes are ....
    a) birds b) dangerous c) plants d) birds
58. The giraffe is................ than the camel .
    a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest
59. I like reading ,........... I don't like drawing .
    a) but b) and c) or d) so
60. .... flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
    a) They b) That c) Those d) These
61. Egyptian farmers raise ....
    a) giraffes b) chickens c) elephants d) lions

62) I like reading, ...I don't like drawing.

a) but b) and c) or d) so

63) Camels are ..... than horses. They are about 2.0 m.

a) slower b) faster c) taller d) tall

64) I have .... pencils than my sister .

a) few b) fewer c) the fewest d) two

65) .... are my friends.

a) This b) Those c) That d) Them

66) I don't drink cola .... I exercise every day.

a) for b) so c) but d) where

67) .... grow vegetables for us to eat.

a) Engineers b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Teachers

68) .... have large beautiful eyes

a) Horses b) Plants c) Flowers d) Potatoes

69) A snake is ....dangerous than a fox.

a) more b) most c) least d) the

70) Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....

a) coats b) horns c) hooves d) fingers

71) We use camels' fur to make ....

a) clothes b) milk c) food d) butter

72) My grandfather grows vegetables and fruit in his farm. He's a/an...............

a) farmer b) engineer c) teacher d) architect

73) What............you like to play with when you were little?

a) did b) do c) does d) doing

74) The..... land animal is the giraffe.

a) tallest b) taller c) tall d) smaller

75) I wash my face in the ....

a) balcony b) bedroom c) bathroom d) bedroom

76) ....are green.

a) Leaves b) Roots c) Soil d) Seeds

77) What is the .... animal in the world?

a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small

78. We use the .... of camels to make clothes
    - a) meat b) milk c) fur d) tooth

79. To mix something again means to ....
    - a) not mix b) mix c) remix d) no mix

80. A: What do farmers raise in Egypt? -.............., cows and ducks.
    - a) Chickens b) Rice c) Potatoes d) milk

81. A cat is small, ... a horse is big.
    - a) on b) so c) but d) and

82. Did you....................a house for your sister's doll?
    - a) made b) make c) making d) makes

83. The .... is made of cloth
    - a) house b) cave c) tent d) apartment

84. There are tall trees in .... of the house .
    - a) front b) next c) under d) on

85. We .... our garden plants every week.
    - a) water b) drink c) paint d) play

86. .... he visit his grandmother last night?
    - a) Did b) Are c) Does d) Is

87. There are four chairs and a table .... the balcony .
    - a) next b) inside c) to d) to

88. Those builders .... building the new hospital
    - a) are b) does c) do d) is

89. A...........works in the tourism industry.
    - a) librarian b) guide c) fisherman d) teacher

90. She loved to experiment. She was very.....................
    - a) sad b) angry c) curious d) lazy

91. A............. fixes cars.
    - a) fisherman b) mechanic c) farmer d) plumber

92. We eat breakfast in the ....
    - a) evening b) morning c) afternoon d) night

93. Egypt is a big ....
    - a) governorate b) country c) city d) village

94 She carried a........................ to open old radios.

ⓐ socket ⓑ screwdriver ⓒ tape measure ⓓ pencil

95 The .... grow under the soil .

ⓐ roots ⓑ leaves ⓒ flowers ⓓ seeds

96 We sleep in the ....

ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ dining room ⓓ living room

97 Camels......... perfect for the desert.

ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ are ⓓ am

98 I like guavas .... watermelon .

ⓐ so ⓑ but ⓒ and ⓓ because

99 Chickens give us ....

ⓐ eggs ⓑ milk ⓒ grass ⓓ pasta

100 The fennec fox is .... other foxes .

ⓐ smaller ⓑ small ⓒ smaller than ⓓ smallest

101 The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the.........

ⓐ music ⓑ engine ⓒ faucet ⓓ pipe

102 My book is .... the table. I can't see it .

ⓐ next ⓑ in front of ⓒ behind ⓓ between

103 Sunflowers face the ....

ⓐ stars ⓑ sun ⓒ moon ⓓ seed

104 .... apples are on the tree . I can't get them

ⓐ Those ⓑ These ⓒ That ⓓ This

105 When Talia........ a baby, she played with blocks.

ⓐ were ⓑ is ⓒ was ⓓ are

106 .... apples are on the tree .

ⓐ Those ⓑ This ⓒ That ⓓ They

107 We use the................... to grow new plants .

ⓐ flowers ⓑ seeds ⓒ leaves ⓓ roots

108 The .... in Hurghada are beautiful . We can swim and play there .

ⓐ schools ⓑ offices ⓒ beaches ⓓ Hospitals

109 He didn't..................angry with his little brothers.

ⓐ got ⓑ get ⓒ gets ⓓ getting

110 The fennec fox lives in the ....
(a) desert (b) sea (c) sky (d) park

111 The old fisherman...........................lovely fresh fish.
(a) drew (b) caught (c) threw (d) wrote

112 We produce vegetables like .... and potatoes
(a) onions (b) bananas (c) watermelon (d) apples

113 Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
(a) healthy (b) unhealthy (c) scary (d) sad

114 Horses are ....
(a) birds (b) animals (c) plants (d) food

115 We have ....in the morning.
(a) lunch (b) dinner (c) breakfast (d) night

116 We..............lots of vegetables in Egypt .
(a) produce (b) raise (c) keep (d) play

117 The fennec fox has a thick............................ to keep warm.
(a) fur (b) beak (c) feather (d) eye

118 Our house is very old. We want to .... It.
(a) repaint (b) redo (c) reread (d) reuse

119 Farmers grow .... and onions.
(a) toys (b) computers (c) tomatoes (d) books

120 Birds have a .... to eat with .
(a) fur (b) wings (c) beak (d) feathers

121 Where is the hospital ? – It's .... The corner .
(a) on (b) at (c) in (d) to

122 The.............. is a small plant .
(a) soil (b) flower (c) shoot (d) root

123 .... bird is so near . I can see it well
(a) that (b) This (c) those (d) these

124 .... have seeds inside.
(a) Tomatoes (b) Eyes (c) Ears (d) Animals

125 I play computer games in the .... It's very comfortable there .
(a) cave (b) living room (c) rock (d) bathroom

126 The .... Is near my house . I can send letters and packages easily
(a) shopping mall (b) post office (c) school (d) hospital

127. We can cook delicious food in our .... It's very big .
   a) bathroom   b) living room   c) kitchen   d) bedroom

128. My uncle lives on a .... He can see water everywhere.
   a) cave   b) tent   c) houseboat   d) house

129. Farmers work in the...............
   a) desert habitat   b) rivers   c) agricultural habitat   d) lakes

130. The plant roots grow .... The soil . We can't see them well .
   a) under   b) above   c) in front of   d) Next to

131. How .... is a horse ? - it is about 459 kg .
   a) happy   b) heavy   c) long   d) tall

132. The hospital is .... to the school . I can get to it quickly .
   a) front   b) between   c) next   d) on

133. The rose is the .... flower
   a) nicer   b) more beautiful   c) most beautiful   d) bigger

134. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a) next to   b) on   c) under   d)

135. How .... is a camel? - It is about 1.9 m tall.
   a) old   b) heavy   c) tall   d) fast

136. .... is Minya ? - it's in the south of Egypt .
   a) When   b) How   c) Where   d) Who

137. .... lives there ? - about 1.5 ,million Egyptians live in Damietta .
   a) When   b) How   c) who   d) Why

138. The ....is in the rock.
   a) house   b) cave   c) tent   d) apartment

139. Go .... ahead and turn right . The supermarket is on the corner
   a) left   b) straight   c) up   d) right

140. .... bus is taking me to school .
   a) these   b) This   c) those   d) They

141. These children .... watching tv .
   a) am   b) is   c) are   d) was

142. Plants that live in the.............do not need a lot of water .
   (a) river (b) desert (c) farm (d) lake

143. Can you help me .... the kitchen ?
   (a) take (b) give (c) organize (d) play

Question 03 Read and complete the text with the words in the box

1

(germination- grows - above – under)

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant .... That is called .... We water the plant every day, and the roots grow .... the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

2

(were – color – repainted – small)

My house is old . I wanted to make it beautiful I .... it . The new ....Was green and red my friend helped me . We .... very happy .

3

(explained - helping - taller – angry)

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes .... people. Sometimes,big brothers can get .... at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and .... things all the time.

4

(teacher - next - kind – town)

I live in a small ....My school is .... to a big park . My father is a .... He is a very .... He teaches English . Students like him very much .

5

(sell - summer - down - meet – parents)

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My .... work in tourist boats so I go with them . we travel up and .... the Nile . I like the .... very much. I see many interesting places and I .... people from all over the world.



(juice- lunch – chicken- delicious – fruits)

I'm hungry. I want to have my .... I like to have .... and rice. The food is .... I love .... too. I want to have watermelon and drink some ....

7

(germination – flowers – red – yellow)

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony ! They have leaves and .... tomatoes are green before they are .... We plant a seed and the plant grows . that is called ....

8

(house - in - Between - front)

My name is Sif . I live in a village next to the Nile . I live in a .... with my family . Our house is .... a pink house and a yellow house . There are tall trees in .... of the house .

9

(beak – paw – hungry – thirsty)

A pelican and a bear are in the river . they are very .... They are both looking at a big juicy fish . the bear reaches for the fish . It lifts its .... the pelican opens its .... it is ready to take the fish out of the water .

10

(catch – live – goats – grow)

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients .The farmers can .... rice , tomatoes , wheat and grapes . Fishermen .... thousands of fish in the sea , cows , ... and sheep live in Damietta governorate . Domiati cheese is very famous .

11

(green-billion- rainwater – life)

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many fruits. They used .... to water the plants. They needed about a .... litres of water a year.They used plants to make the land ....



(streets - collector - builder - deliver)

we need all jobs . All the local homes and businessmen need a mail carrier to .... The packages and letters . We all need the garbage .... To take away the garbage and keep the .... clean .



(school - balcony - between - friends – hospital)

We live in a big house near the sea . We have a big ....We put flowers in it .Our house is .... The post office and the .... I walk to my .... Every day . It is wonderful . I meet my .... And play together .

Question 04 Read the text and answer the questions

1

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the passage in about..................
(cutting trees - keeping animals - growing mangoes - playing under trees)
2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of..................
(vegetables – rice – fruit – dessert)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees?
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do?



I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers can change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.



A) Choose the correct answer:

1 The text is about the (doctor's - teacher's - engineer's) job.

2 Teachers need to be very (nervous- patient - unkind).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What do students ask?

4 Who can change the students' lives?



Damietta is a big Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers there grow many foods such as rice, wheat, tomatoes, potatoes, lemons, grapes and guavas. They raise farm animals such as goats, cows and sheep, too. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live there. Life in Damietta is good.

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Damietta governorate – Domiati cheese – Fishermen) is the best title for the passage.

2 The life in Damietta is (bad – good – sad).

Answer the following question :

1- What do farmers in Damietta governorate grow?



There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, thegarbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the text is about ....

(electricity – jobs – water – children)

2 – A...................... helps you keep your street clean.

(farmer – teacher - garbage collector – plumber)

B-Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us?

....

4. Who drives you to school?

....



Sarah's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to land.

A-Choose the correct answer:

1-Sarah's grandparents decided to buy

(a new house- some land-some trees-some flowers).

2-They lived in...... (the village-the city-the farm-the land).

B-Answer the following questions:

3-What did Sarah's grandparents plant?

4-How did they water the seeds?



My name is Hani. I live in a big house. It has two bedrooms, a big living room, a dining room, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is my favourite room. I sleep and do my homework in it. I love sitting in the balcony, too. We grow plants and flowers there.

A) Choose the correct answers:

1 - Hani lives in a (apartment – house – house boat – cave)

2 - Hani's favourite room is the (dinig room – kitchen – bathroom – bedroom)

B) Answer the following questions:

3- Where does Hani grow plants and flowers?

4- What does Hani do in his bedroom?



Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment.has .... bedrooms .

(two – three – four – five)



2 - Nada can see the street from the ....

(bedroom – balcony – kitchen – bathroom)

B. Answer the following questions:

3 - What is Nada's favorite room?

....

4 - Where is the new apartment?

....

8

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram. The fox loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fox loses ... heat .... from its ears.
(heat – cold – water – food)
2. The fennec fox is ... smaller .... than other foxes.
(bigger - smaller – thinner – taller)
3. The fox's thick................. keeps it warm at night.
(beak – feather – wing – fur)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the fennec fox live?

....

5. What does the fennec fox eat?

....

9

My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. Abeer works at a ....
(school – supermarket – hospital – bank)

2 - We see Abeer every ....

(week – month – day – year)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Abeer check?

....

4. When does Abeer help us?

....

Question 05 Read and write the correct form of the words between backets

1. The bear is stronger .... (that) the pelican.
2. Ancient Egyptians .... (make) paper from papyrus.
3. The school is .... [between] the corner.
4. The shopping mall is .... (of) the supermarket and the bank .
5. I eat vegetables .... (but) I exercise.
6. The girl is .... [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.
7. I drink cola, ... (and) I want to drink more water.
8. The rose is the .... [more] beautiful flower .
9. He is a .... (care) driver.
10. Crocodiles and snakes are the .... [more] dangerous animals.
11. The plane is .... [fastest) than the train.
12. The hospital is .... (next) of the school.
13. My house is .... (next to) the tall house and the tree.
14. The turtle is .... [than) slowest animal .
15. This sunflower lives the .... (long) .
16. Let's .... (eating) lunch.
17. Adel is .... [most) intelligent than Wael.
18. The couch is .... (on) the living room.
19. How .... (tall) is the fennec fox? - It's one kg.
20. My city is .... (nicer) place to live.
21. This car .... [are] very expensive.
22. My cat is the .... (big) on our street.
23. Which animal is the .... (scary)?
24. The chef .... (made) rice. This means he made it again.

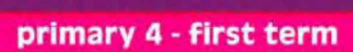


25. The cat .... [appeared). I can't see it.
26. He .... (painted) his house. This means he painted it again.
27. The fennec fox is .... (small) than other foxes.
28. The snake is the .... (scary) animal .
29. There is a tree .... (under) to my house.
30. She always cares for her children. She's very .... [care].
31. Hurghada .... (be) in the east of Egypt.
32. Crocodiles are .... [more] dangerous animals.
33. Chocolate is .... (most) delicious than candies.
34. .... (That) are my shoes.
35. .... (What) tall is the horse? - 1.8 m.
36. Nada is a very .... [beauty) girl.
37. Elephants are the .... [bigger) animals.
38. The sunflower is .... [that] tallest flower.
39. What do you .... [wanted] to be?
40. He wants to .... [being] an engineer.
41. Rhim Gazelles have .... (bigger) ears and long horns .
42. The book is .... (in) the shelf.
43. Tomatoes .... (has) seeds inside.
44. These children .... (is) watching TV.
45. These keys .... [is] made of metal.
46. Dogs are .... [thin] than elephants .
47. I think maize is .... (delicious) of these three plants.
48. My house is .... (next) the tall house and the tree.
49. I play basketball .... (but) I play football in the park.
50. Those .... [is] my Pencils .
51. I want to go swimming, ... [so] my leg hurts.
52. This cat is the .... (nice) in our street.
53. How .... (heavier) is the horse ? - It's 390 H
54. After school, I do my homework .... [but] I eat dinner.
55. Which animal is the .... [scarier]?
56. He speaks English, ... [and] he can't speak Chinese.
57. I play basketball .... (but) I play football in the park.

58. The kitchen is .... (in front) to the living room.
59. Look! A plane is flying .... (on) our house.
60. This .... [are] my car.
61. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I like fruit.
62. Shaimaa .... (did) her homework. This means she did it again.

Question 06 Puntcuate the following

1. egyptian farmers produce many things
   ....
2. we grow cotton in Egypt
   ....
3. all jobs are important
   ....
4. sugarcane is a sweet plant
   ....
5. what does the plant use to make its food
   ....
6. my friend lives in Cairo
   ....
7. what job do you want to do
   ....
8. farmers grow food for us to eat
   ....
9. i like playing football
   ....
10. who helps you keep your home clean
    ....
11. a bird has two wings
    ....
12. snakes are scary animals
    ....
13. hurghada is in the east of Egypt
    ....




14. my name s mahmoud

....

15. where do you live

....

16. she s patient and helpful

....

17. do you like fish

....

18. why is a broken wire dangerous

....

19. I live on a farm

....

20. don't touch a broken wire

....

21. how tall are you

....

22. what do you want to do

....

23. I go to the supermaket with lara

....

24. the bear is a big animal

....

25. my father is a doctor

....

26. what does the heart do

....

27. which animal is scary

....

28. how many people helped you in your home

....

29. is lara an electrician

....

what do you want to be

....



Question 07 write a paragrabh of 18 words using the following elements



The germination process

(seeds – roots)

....

....

2

A garbage collector

(outside – clean)

....

....

3

The fennec fox

(desert - lizards)

....

....

4

Camels

(Strong - without water)

....

....

5

My house

(favorite room – balcony)

....

....



6

My town

(supermarkets– shopping mall)

....

....

7

'My favorite job'

(teacher – help)

....

....

8

'Horses'

(strong – grass)

....

....

9

Food in Egypt

(produce – raise)

....

....

10

Being Healthy

(drink water – play basketball)

....

....

11

The life cycle of a sunflower

(plant a seed – faces the sun)

....

....

12

Electricity

(dangerous – wet hands)

....

....

13

Your favorite room

(living room – watch TV)

....

....

14

Different jobs

(electrician – plumber)

....

....

تم بحمد الله ،

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم



Listening texts



My name is Yasser. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. My dad is a scientist. We go with him every weekend. We sometimes have pizza for lunch there. I love it.

2

Lara works at the supermarket near her house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. She checks that the food is fresh. She helps me when I can't find something. She is very kind and helpful.

3

Horses have large and beautiful eyes. They are faster than camels. They have strong teeth. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to 30 years.

4

I want to be a mail carrier. Mail carriers work outside all day and get a lot of exercise. They also meet many people and make new friends.

5

Camels are amazing! They are beautiful, strong animals. Their milk is delicious. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. We can use their fur to make clothes.

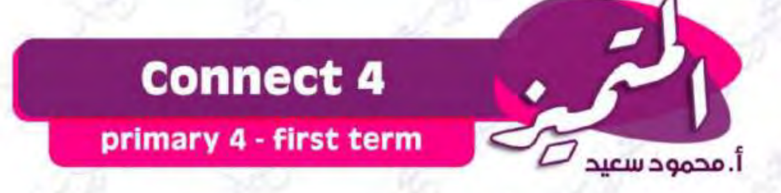
6

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.

7

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.

Answers





First term Questions Bank



Question 01 Listen and circle the correct answer



Listen and circle the correct answer :

1 - They go walking in the................
(farm - street - park - desert).
2 - Yesser loves ....
(pizza - pasta - cola - burgers).
3- Yesser's dad is a....................
(teacher - farmer - doctor - scientist).
4 - They go walking every......................
(day - weekend - month - night).



Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - Lara works at the .... near her house.
(supermarket – bank – hospital – school)
2 - My family and I see her every................
(month – week – day – year)
3 – Lara checks that the food is..................
(fresh – healthy – unhealthy – bad)
4 – Lara is very kind and ....
(lazy – helpful – clever - careful



Listen and circle the correct answer :
1 - Horses have large and beautiful ....
(legs – ears – eyes- hands)
2 - They are .... than camels.
(faster – slower- bigger - smaller)
3 - They have .... teeth .
(weak – strong – big – small)
4 - They eat grass and drink fresh.................
(milk - juice – rain – water)

4

Listen and circle the correct answer :

1 - I want to be a..................
(mail carrier – teacher – vet – doctor)

2 - Mail carriers work...........all day.
(indoors – abroad – inside – outside)

3 - They get a lot of ....
(food – exercise – fats – money)

4 - They also .... many people.
(talk – hate – meet – love)

5

Listen and circle the correct answer :

1 . ... are amazing .
(Monkeys – Camels – Foxes – Cows)

2 - They are beautiful, ...animals
(heavy – long – weak – strong)

3 – their .... is delicious.
(milk – water – juice – soup)

4 - We can use their..................to make clothes.
(fats – claws – milk – fur)

6

Listen and circle the correct answer :

1- Damietta is a..................
(mountain - governorate - country - village).

2 - Damietta's land is rich in ....
(nutrients - sweets - cheese - sugar).

3 - Farmers .... vegetables and fruits.
(grow - feed - eat - raise)

4 Fishermen .... fish in the sea.
(grow - catch - chase - raise)

7

Listen and circle the correct answer :

1 - I live in an apartment with my............................
(friends – teachers – family – classmates)

2 - I can relax and do my homework in my ....
(living room – bedroom – kitchen – balcony)

3 - I can see the whole street from the ....
(kitchen – bedroom - balcony– bathroom)

4 - I watch TV in the....................
(balcony – kitchen – bedroom - living room)

Question 02 choose the correct answer

1. Our house is so old . we need to .... it .
   - a) **Repaint**
   - b) Recook
   - c) Reread
   - d) Rewrite
2. We use ....to make sugar .
   - a) onions
   - b) Watermelon
   - c) **Sugarcane**
   - d) grapes
3. A mail carrier .... Your letters .
   - a) connects
   - b) throws
   - c) **delivers**
   - d) puts
4. The .... can fly high in the sky .
   - a) bear
   - b) **pelican**
   - c) dog
   - d) cat
5. She always .... a pencil when she was little.
   - a) carry
   - b) carrying
   - c) **carried**
   - d) to carry
6. How .... is a horse? - It is about 459 kg.
   - a) long
   - b) **heavy**
   - c) happy
   - d) short
7. I like chicken .... I don't like chips .
   - a) **but**
   - b) and
   - c) so
   - d) because
8. The .... always carries a screwdriver when he works .
   - a) doctor
   - b) **electrician**
   - c) teacher
   - d) dentist
9. The yellow flower is .... than the red flower .
   - a) **more beautiful**
   - b) beautiful less
   - c) beautiful
   - d) tall
10. Elephants are ....than dogs.
    - a) thinner
    - b) big
    - c) **bigger**
    - d) biggest
11. Camels have large, flat ....so they can walk on the sand.
    - a) hands
    - b) **feet**
    - c) legs
    - d) teeth
12. She..........ice cream.
    - a) don't like
    - b) **dislikes**
    - c) like to
    - d) like
13. Never put anything into a .... only use plugs.
    - a) tape
    - b) box
    - c) bin
    - d) **socket**
14. The roots grow .... the soil.
    - a) next to
    - b) on
    - c) **under**
    - d) above

15. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   - a) pink b) **green** c) blue d) black

16. I sit .... Lara and seif
   - a) in b) above c) **between** d) on

17. Domiati .... is very famous .
   - a) milk b) **cheese** c) guava d) banana

18. ....catch fish in the sea .
   - a) farmers b) **Fishermen** c) doctors d) Teachers

19. She loved to experiment , she was very ....
   - a) sad b) Angry c) **curious** d) lazy

20. This .... my car
   - a) **is** b) are c) were d) do

21. We ....the plant every day.
   - a) **water** b) read c) look d) play

22. There is a cat in .... of the tree
   - a) behind b) next c) **front** d) between

23. A / An .... Helps me in the library .
   - Vet b) engineer c) **librarian** d) guide

24. Birds have one.................
   - a) wing b) feather c) **beak** d) tooth

25. My grandpa taught me all................cars
   - a) of b) around c) off d) **about**

26. I like playing tennis, ... I can't play well.
   - a) and b) from c) **but** d) so

27. I explain the history to the tourists , I work in the .... Industry .
   - a) education b) fishing c) farming d) **tourism**

28. They live in a .... they enjoy the fresh air of the country .
   - a) city b) town c) **village** d) lake

29. The Egyptian land is .... in nutrients.
   - a) poor b) **rich** c) bad d) weak

30. I like grapes........... bananas
   - a) but b) or c) **and** d) so



31. I respect the .... I don't throw trash .
   - a) bus driver
   - b) Librarian
   - c) cleaner
   - d) teacher
32. A lot of .... visit Hurghada .
   - a) tourists
   - b) thieves
   - c) clubs
   - d) computers
33. These .... my father's tools . He uses to fix things .
   - a) are
   - b) is
   - c) am
   - d) was
34. If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an......
   - a) electrician
   - b) mail carrier
   - c) bus driver
   - d) plumber
35. There is not much rain in the ....
   - a) agricultural habitat
   - b) desert habitat
   - c) rivers
   - d) lakes
36. This .... is near my house . It sells good food .
   - a) post office
   - b) living room
   - c) supermarket
   - d) balcony
37. The electricians connect...............so that we can use lights.
   - a) bus
   - b) bag
   - c) garbage
   - d) electricity
38. A mail carrier delivers.................
   - a) parcels
   - b) cars
   - c) trash
   - d) faucets
39. .... are very dangerous animals.
   - a) Crocodiles
   - b) Cats
   - c) Pelicans
   - d) Birds
40. I eat vegetables .... exercise.
   - a) so
   - b) and
   - c) or
   - d) but
41. We .... chickens in Egypt.
   - a) produce
   - b) raise
   - c) grow
   - d) plant
42. I found.................. cat in the park..
   - a) those
   - b) this
   - c) these
   - d) they
43. There's a plant .... The couch .
   - a) in
   - b) next to
   - c) between
   - d) in front
44. Plants near .... need a lot of water .
   - a) desert
   - b) farms
   - c) lakes
   - d) mountains
45. The park is .... The supermarket . I can't see it well .
   - a) next
   - b) behind
   - c) between
   - d) in front
46. I want .... a mechanic .
   - a) are
   - b) to be
   - c) being
   - d) is



47. We sometimes see a flash of..............in a storm.
    a) electricity b) shock c) lightning d) water
48. Tourists usually go on .... when they are in the Sahara desert .
    a) visits b) tents c) safaris d) games
49. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt .... the Red Sea .
    a) in b) at c) on d) to
50. The red box is .... the two rooms
    a) on b) between c) in front d) next
51. When dad..............young, he wanted to be a doctor.
    a) am b) is c) was d) were
52. There is a plant .... the sofa
    a) next b) behind c) front d) between
53. Plants need .... and water to grow.
    a) sunlight b) leaves c) fruit d) books
54. You can ride .... in the desert .
    a) lions b) dogs c) camels d) chickens
55. Never touch anything electrical with.....................hands.
    a) wet b) dry c) clever d) open
56. The..................... helps us to cross the desert .
    a) eagle b) bear c) camel d) cat
57. Snakes are ....
    a) birds b) dangerous c) plants d) birds
58. The giraffe is................ than the camel .
    a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest
59. I like reading ,........... I don't like drawing .
    a) but b) and c) or d) so
60. .... flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
    a) They b) That c) Those d) These
61. Egyptian farmers raise ....
    a) giraffes b) chickens c) elephants d) lions

62. I like reading, ...I don't like drawing.
    - a) **but**
    - b) and
    - c) or
    - d) so
63. Camels are ..... than horses. They are about 2.0 m.
    - a) slower
    - b) faster
    - c) **taller**
    - d) tall
64. I have .... pencils than my sister .
    - a) few
    - b) **fewer**
    - c) the fewest
    - d) two
65. .... are my friends.
    - a) This
    - b) **Those**
    - c) That
    - d) Them
66. I don't drink cola .... I exercise every day.
    - a) for
    - b) so
    - c) **but**
    - d) where
67. .... grow vegetables for us to eat.
    - a) Engineers
    - b) **Farmers**
    - c) Doctors
    - d) Teachers
68. .... have large beautiful eyes
    - a) **Horses**
    - b) Plants
    - c) Flowers
    - d) Potatoes
69. A snake is ....dangerous than a fox.
    - a) **more**
    - b) most
    - c) least
    - d) the
70. Rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....
    - a) coats
    - b) **horns**
    - c) hooves
    - d) fingers
71. We use camels' fur to make ....
    - a) **clothes**
    - b) milk
    - c) food
    - d) butter
72. My grandfather grows vegetables and fruit in his farm. He's a/an..............
    - a) **farmer**
    - b) engineer
    - c) teacher
    - d) architect
73. What............you like to play with when you were little?
    - a) **did**
    - b) do
    - c) does
    - d) doing
74. The..... land animal is the giraffe.
    - a) **tallest**
    - b) taller
    - c) tall
    - d) smaller
75. I wash my face in the ....
    - a) balcony
    - b) bedroom
    - c) **bathroom**
    - d) bedroom
76. ....are green.
    - a) **Leaves**
    - b) Roots
    - c) Soil
    - d) Seeds
77. What is the .... animal in the world?
    - a) big
    - b) bigger
    - c) **biggest**
    - d) small

78. We use the .... of camels to make clothes
(a) meat (b) milk (c) fur (d) tooth

79. To mix something again means to ....
(a) not mix (b) mix (c) remix (d) no mix

80. A: What do farmers raise in Egypt? -.............., cows and ducks.
(a) Chickens (b) Rice (c) Potatoes (d) milk

81. A cat is small, ... a horse is big.
(a) on (b) so (c) but (d) and

82. Did you....................a house for your sister's doll?
(a) made (b) make (c) making (d) makes

83. The .... is made of cloth
(a) house (b) cave (c) tent (d) apartment

84. There are tall trees in .... of the house .
(a) front (b) next (c) under (d) on

85. We .... our garden plants every week.
(a) water (b) drink (c) paint (d) play

86. .... he visit his grandmother last night?
(a) Did (b) Are (c) Does (d) Is

87. There are four chairs and a table .... the balcony .
(a) next (b) inside (c) to (d) to

88. Those builders .... building the new hospital
(a) are (b) does (c) do (d) is

89. A...........works in the tourism industry.
(a) librarian (b) guide (c) fisherman (d) teacher

90. She loved to experiment. She was very.....................
(a) sad (b) angry (c) curious (d) lazy

91. A............. fixes cars.
(a) fisherman (b) mechanic (c) farmer (d) plumber

92. We eat breakfast in the ....
(a) evening (b) morning (c) afternoon (d) night

93. Egypt is a big ....
(a) governorate (b) country (c) city (d) village



94. She carried a........................ to open old radios.
   a) socket b) screwdriver c) tape measure d) pencil

95. The .... grow under the soil .
   a) roots b) leaves c) flowers d) seeds

96. We sleep in the ....
   a) bedroom b) kitchen c) dining room d) living room

97. Camels......... perfect for the desert.
   a) is b) was c) are d) am

98. I like guavas .... watermelon .
   a) so b) but c) and d) because

99. Chickens give us ....
   a) eggs b) milk c) grass d) pasta

100. The fennec fox is .... other foxes .
   a) smaller b) small c) smaller than d) smallest

101. The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the.........
   a) music b) engine c) faucet d) pipe

102. My book is .... the table. I can't see it .
   a) next b) in front of c) behind d) between

103. Sunflowers face the ....
   a) stars b) sun c) moon d) seed

104. .... apples are on the tree . I can't get them
   a) Those b) These c) That d) This

105. When Talia........ a baby, she played with blocks.
   a) were b) is c) was d) are

106. .... apples are on the tree .
   a) Those b) This c) That d) They

107. We use the.................. to grow new plants .
   a) flowers b) seeds c) leaves d) roots

108. The .... in Hurghada are beautiful . We can swim and play there .
   a) schools b) offices c) beaches d) Hospitals

109. He didn't.................angry with his little brothers.
   a) got b) get c) gets d) getting

110. The fennec fox lives in the ....
   a. desert   b. sea   c. sky   d. park

111. The old fisherman.........................lovely fresh fish.
   a. drew   b. caught   c. threw   d. wrote

112. We produce vegetables like .... and potatoes
   a. onions   b. bananas   c. watermelon   d. apples

113. Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
   a. healthy   b. unhealthy   c. scary   d. sad

114. Horses are ....
   a. birds   b. animals   c. plants   d. food

115. We have ....in the morning.
   a. lunch   b. dinner   c. breakfast   d. night

116. We..............lots of vegetables in Egypt .
   a. produce   b. raise   c. keep   d. play

117. The fennec fox has a thick............................ to keep warm.
   a. fur   b. beak   c. feather   d. eye

118. Our house is very old. We want to .... It.
   a. repaint   b. redo   c. reread   d. reuse

119. Farmers grow .... and onions.
   a. toys   b. computers   c. tomatoes   d. books

120. Birds have a .... to eat with .
   a. fur   b. wings   c. beak   d. feathers

121. Where is the hospital ? – It's .... The corner .
   a. on   b. at   c. in   d. to

122. The............... is a small plant .
   a. soil   b. flower   c. shoot   d. root

123. .... bird is so near . I can see it well
   a. that   b. This   c. those   d. these

124. .... have seeds inside.
   a. Tomatoes   b. Eyes   c. Ears   d. Animals

125. I play computer games in the .... It's very comfortable there .
   a. cave   b. living room   c. rock   d. bathroom

126. The .... Is near my house . I can send letters and packages easily
   a. shopping mall   b. post office   c. school   d. hospital




127. We can cook delicious food in our .... It's very big .
   a) bathroom b) living room c) kitchen d) bedroom
128. My uncle lives on a .... He can see water everywhere.
   a) cave b) tent c) houseboat d) house
129. Farmers work in the...............
   a) desert habitat b) rivers c) agricultural habitat d) lakes
130. The plant roots grow .... The soil . We can't see them well .
   a) under b) above c) in front of d) Next to
131. How .... is a horse ? - it is about 459 kg .
   a) happy b) heavy c) long d) tall
132. The hospital is .... to the school . I can get to it quickly .
   a) front b) between c) next d) on
133. The rose is the .... flower
   a) nicer b) more beautiful c) most beautiful d) bigger
134. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a) next to b) on c) under d)
135. How .... is a camel? - It is about 1.9 m tall.
   a) old b) heavy c) tall d) fast
136. .... is Minya ? - it's in the south of Egypt .
   a) When b) How c) Where d) Who
137. .... lives there ? - about 1.5 ,million Egyptians live in Damietta .
   a) When b) How c) who d) Why
138. The ....is in the rock.
   a) house b) cave c) tent d) apartment
139. Go .... ahead and turn right . The supermarket is on the corner
   a) left b) straight c) up d) right
140. .... bus is taking me to school .
   a) these b) This c) those d) They
141. These children .... watching tv .
   a) am b) is c) are d) was

(142) Plants that live in the..............do not need a lot of water .

(a) river (b) desert (c) farm (d) lake

(143) Can you help me .... the kitchen ?

(a) take (b) give (c) organize (d) play

Question 03

Read and complete the text with the words in the box



(germination- grows - above – under)

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows .That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.



(were – color – repainted – small)

My house is old . I wanted to make it beautiful I repainted it . The new color Was green and red my friend helped me . We were very happy .



(explained - helping - taller – angry)

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes helping people. Sometimes,big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and explained things all the time.



(teacher - next - kind – town)

I live in a small town .My school is next to a big park . My father is a teacher He is a very kind He teaches English . Students like him very much .



(sell - summer - down - meet – parents)

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My parents work in tourist boats so I go with them . we travel up and down the Nile . I like the summer very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the world.



(juice- lunch – chicken- delicious – fruits)

I'm hungry. I want to have my ... lunch .... . I like to have ... chicken .... and rice. The food is ...... delicious ...... I love ...... fruits .... too. I want to have watermelon and drink some .... juice ......

7

(germination – flowers – red – yellow)

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony ! They have leaves and ....flowers..... tomatoes are green before they are ... red .... We plant a seed and the plant grows . that is called ... germination ....



(house - in - Between - front)

My name is Sif . I live in a village next to the Nile . I live in a house with my family . Our house is between a pink house and a yellow house . There are tall trees in front of the house .



(beak – paw – hungry – thirsty)

A pelican and a bear are in the river . they are very .... hungry .... They are both looking at a big juicy fish . the bear reaches for the fish . It lifts its ... paw ... the pelican opens its .... beak ... it is ready to take the fish out of the water .



(catch – live – goats – grow)

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients .The farmers can ..... grow ..... rice , tomatoes , wheat and grapes . Fishermen .... catch .... thousands of fish in the sea , cows , ... goats ..... and sheep live in Damietta governorate . Domiati cheese is very famous .

11

(green-billion- rainwater – life)

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a billion litres of water a year.They used plants to make the land green



(streets - collector - builder - deliver)

we need all jobs . All the local homes and businessmen need a mail carrier to deliver The packages and letters . We all need the garbage collector To take away the garbage and keep the streets clean .



(school - balcony - between - friends – hospital)

We live in a big house near the sea . We have a big balcony .We put flowers in it .Our house is between The post office and the hospital . I walk to my school Every day . It is wonderful . I meet my friends And play together .

Question 04 Read the text and answer the questions



Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the passage in about..................
(cutting trees - keeping animals - growing mangoes - playing under trees)
2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of..................
(vegetables – rice – fruit – dessert)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees?
To sell the wood
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do?
He advised him to grow more trees.



I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers can change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1 The text is about the (doctor's - teacher's - engineer's) job.

2 Teachers need to be very (nervous- patient - unkind).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What do students ask?

Students always ask surprising questions.

4 Who can change the students' lives?

The teacher



Damietta is a big Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers there grow many foods such as rice, wheat, tomatoes, potatoes, lemons, grapes and guavas. They raise farm animals such as goats, cows and sheep, too. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live there. Life in Damietta is good.

Choose the correct answer:

3 (Damietta governorate – Domiati cheese – Fishermen) is the best title for the passage.

4 The life in Damietta is (bad – good – sad).

Answer the following question :

2- What do farmers in Damietta governorate grow?

They grow many foods such as rice, wheat , tomatoes , potatoes , lemons , grapes and guavas .



There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, thegarbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the text is about ....

(electricity – jobs – water – children)

2 – A....................... helps you keep your street clean.

(farmer – teacher - garbage collector – plumber)

B-Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us?

The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes.

4. Who drives you to school?

The bus driver takes us to school.



Sarah's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to land.

A-Choose the correct answer:

1-Sarah's grandparents decided to buy

(a new house- some land-some trees-some flowers).

2-They lived in...... (the village-the city-the farm-the land).

B-Answer the following questions:

3-What did Sarah's grandparents plant? They planted millions of seeds.

4-How did they water the seeds? They used rainwater to water the seeds.



My name is Hani. I live in a big house. It has two bedrooms, a big living room, a dining room, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is my favourite room. I sleep and do my homework in it. I love sitting in the balcony, too. We grow plants and flowers there.

A) Choose the correct answers:

1 - Hani lives in a (apartment – house – house boat – cave)

2 - Hani's favourite room is the (dinig room – kitchen – bathroom – bedroom)

B) Answer the following questions:

3- Where does Hani grow plants and flowers?in the balcony.

4- What does Hani do in his bedroom? He sleeps and does his homework in it.



Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment.has .... bedrooms .

(two – three – four – five)

2 - Nada can see the street from the ....

(bedroom – balcony – kitchen – bathroom)

B. Answer the following questions:

3 - What is Nada's favorite room?

Nada's favorite room is the living room.

4 - Where is the new apartment?

It is near Nada's school.



The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram. The fox loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fox loses ... heat .... from its ears.
(heat – cold – water – food)
2. The fennec fox is ... smaller .... than other foxes.
(bigger - smaller – thinner – taller)
3. The fox's thick... fur .... keeps it warm at night.
(beak – feather – wing – fur)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the fennec fox live?
The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.
5. What does the fennec fox eat?
It eats insects, small lizards and mice.



My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abeer works at a ....
(school – supermarket – hospital – bank)

2 - We see Abeer every ....

(week – month – day – year)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Abeer check?

Abeer checks the food is fresh.

4. When does Abeer help us?

She helps us when we can't find something.

Question 05 Read and write the correct form of the words between backets

1. The bear is stronger than (that) the pelican.
2. Ancient Egyptians made (make) paper from papyrus.
3. The school is on [between] the corner.
4. The shopping mall is between (of) the supermarket and the bank .
5. I eat vegetables and (but) I exercise.
6. The girl is disappointed [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.
7. I drink cola, but (and) I want to drink more water.
8. The rose is the most [more] beautiful flower .
9. He is a careful (care) driver.
10. Crocodiles and snakes are the most [more] dangerous animals.
11. The plane is faster [fastest) than the train.
12. The hospital is in front (next) of the school.
13. My house is between (next to) the tall house and the tree.
14. The turtle is the [than) slowest animal .
15. This sunflower lives the longest (long) .
16. Let's eat (eating) lunch.
17. Adel is more [most) intelligent than Wael.
18. The couch is in (on) the living room.
19. How heavy (tall) is the fennec fox? - It's one kg.
20. My city is the nicest (nicer) place to live.
21. This car is [are] very expensive.
22. My cat is the biggest (big) on our street.
23. Which animal is the scariest (scary)?
24. The chef remade (made) rice. This means he made it again.






25. The cat disappeared [appeared]. I can't see it.
26. He repainted (painted) his house. This means he painted it again.
27. The fennec fox is smaller (small) than other foxes.
28. The snake is the scariest (scary) animal .
29. There is a tree next (under) to my house.
30. She always cares for her children. She's very careful [care].
31. Hurghada is (be) in the east of Egypt.
32. Crocodiles are the most [more] dangerous animals.
33. Chocolate is more (most) delicious than candies.
34. Those (That) are my shoes.
35. How (What) tall is the horse? - 1.8 m.
36. Nada is a very beautiful [beauty) girl.
37. Elephants are the biggest [bigger) animals.
38. The sunflower is the [that] tallest flower.
39. What do you want [wanted] to be?
40. He wants to be [being] an engineer.
41. Rhim Gazelles have big (bigger) ears and long horns .
42. The book is on (in) the shelf.
43. Tomatoes have (has) seeds inside.
44. These children are (is) watching TV.
45. These keys are [is] made of metal.
46. Dogs are thinner [thin] than elephants .
47. I think maize is the most delicious (delicious) of these three plants.
48. My house is between (next) the tall house and the tree.
49. I play basketball and (but) I play football in the park.
50. Those are [is] my Pencils .
51. I want to go swimming, but [so] my leg hurts.
52. This cat is the nicest (nice) in our street.
53. How heavy (heavier) is the horse ? - It's 390 H
54. After school, I do my homework and [but] I eat dinner.
55. Which animal is the scariest [scarier]?
56. He speaks English, but [and] he can't speak Chinese.
57. I play basketball and (but) I play football in the park.

58. The kitchen is next (in front) to the living room.
59. Look! A plane is flying above (on) our house.
60. This is [are] my car.
61. I don't eat candy, but (and) I like fruit.
62. Shaimaa redid (did) her homework. This means she did it again.

Question 06 Puntcuate the following

1. egyptian farmers produce many things
   Egyptian farmers produce many things.
2. we grow cotton in Egypt
   We grow cotton in Egypt.
3. all jobs are important
   All jobs are important .
4. sugarcane is a sweet plant
   Sugarcane is a sweet plant.
5. what does the plant use to make its food
   What does the plant use to make its food ?
6. my friend lives in Cairo
   My friend lives in Cairo.
7. what job do you want to do
   What job do you want to do ?
8. farmers grow food for us to eat
   Farmers grow food for us to eat.
9. i like playing football
   I like playing football.
10. who helps you keep your home clean
    Who helps you keep your home clean ?
11. a bird has two wings
    A bird has two wings.
12. snakes are scary animals
    Snakes are scary animals.

hurghada is in the east of Egypt



13. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt.
14. my name s mahmoud
    My name's Mahmoud.
15. where do you live
    Where do you live?
16. she s patient and helpful
    She's patient and helpful.
17. do you like fish
    Do you like fish?
18. why is a broken wire dangerous
    Why is a broken wire dangerous ?
19. I live on a farm
    I live on a farm.
20. don't touch a broken wire
    Don't touch a broken wire.
21. how tall are you
    How tall are you ?
22. what do you want to do
    What do you want to do?
23. I go to the supermaket with lara
    I go to the supermarket with Lara .
24. the bear is a big animal
    The bear is a big animal.
25. my father is a doctor
    My father is a doctor.
26. what does the heart do
    What does the heart do?
27. which animal is scary
    Which animal is scary?
28. how many people helped you in your home
    How many people helped you in your home ?
29. is lara an electrician
    Is Lara an electrician ?

what do you want to be

What do you want to be ?

Question 07 write a paragrabh of 18 words using the following elements



The germination process

(seeds – roots)

To grow any plant, we follow some steps. First, we put the seeds in soil. Next, we water the seed. The seed germinates. Then, the roots grow under the soil and the shoot grows above the soil. We water the plant. After that, the plant has flower. Finally, the flowers become fruits.



A garbage collector

(outside – clean)

The garbage collector is a difficult job. He's outside all day. He gets wet when rains. He is happy because he helps to dean the city. He is healthy because he walks every day.



The fennec fox

(desert - lizards)

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears. It is about 20 centimeters tall. It is about one kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small animals. When it is hot, the fox loses heat from its ears.



Camels

(Strong - without water)

Camels are strong animals They help us to carry things to cross the desert. Camel's milk is delicious. Camels have large, flat feet. They can live without water for a long time.

5

My house

(favorite room – balcony)

My family and I live in a big house. It has many rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom with a balcony, because I enjoy the view of the street and the garden



My town

(supermarkets – shopping mall)

I live in a small town. It has many houses, stores, supermarkets, a shopping mall a park and a school. I go to school in the morning. I play football with my friends at the park in the afternoon. In the evening, I watch TV at home.



'My favorite job'

(teacher – help)

I want to be a teacher. It's a good job. I want to help children learn. I think I'm patient. A good teacher is ready to learn. A teacher can change their students' lives.



'Horses'

(strong – grass)

Horses are amazing. They are strong animals. They can run fast. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful eyes.



Food in Egypt

(produce – raise)

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow a lot of food for us to eat. They grow fruit and vegetables. They raise chickens to get eggs



Being Healthy

(drink water – play basketball)

To be healthy, You should drink plenty of water. You should eat healthy food. You should do a lot of exercise. You should play basketball. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food.



The life cycle of a sunflower

(plant a seed – faces the sun)

First, we plant a seed in the soil. Next, the seed germinates and starts to grow. It grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies. It drops its seeds . The process begins again.



Electricity

(dangerous – wet hands)

Electricity is very dangerous. You can get an electric shock. To use electricity safely, Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything electrical into the socket. Only use plugs.



Your favorite room

(living room – watch TV)

My favorite room is the living room. There is a big balcony. I can see the whole street. I watch TV in the living room. I talk to my family in the living room.



Different jobs

(electrician – plumber)

All jobs are important. An electrician connects electricity. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels. A garbage collector helps to keep our house clean.

تم بحمد الله ،

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم

حمل الان

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (3)







Unit 1



I feel good

أشعر أنني بخير

Key vocabulary :

milk	bananas	mangoes	grapes	watermelon
لبن	موز	مانجو	عنب	بطيخ
potatoes	onions	sugarcane	rice	chicken
بطاطس	بصل	قصب	أرز	فراخ
burger	candy	cola	football	video games
برجر	حلوى	كولا	كرة القدم	ألعاب الفيديو
wheelchair	scientist	basketball	team	banana milkshake
كرسي متحرك	عالم	كرة السلة	فريق	مخفوق الموز باللبن
emperor	palace	competition	gardener	emperor
امبراطور	قصر	منافسة	جنايني	امبراطور
seeds	honest	China	king	seeds
بذور	شخص أمين	دولة الصين	ملك	بذور
governorate	fishermen	guavas	farmers	grapes
محافظة	صياد	جوافة	فلاح	عنب
wheat	lemons	crops	sheep	goat
قمح	ليمون أصفر	محاصيل	خروف	معزة

Grammar

and — نستخدمها للربط بين جملتين متشابهتين أو لاضافة معلومات

- We eat healthy food and I exercise.
- Maryam loves chocolate and icecream.
- After school, I have lunch and I do my homework.

but — نستخدمها للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين (عكس بعض)

- I want to play football, but I hurt my leg.
- I can speak English, but I can't speak French.
- I want to go to work, but I am ill.

The prefix "re"

هي بادئة تضاف قبل الفعل و تعطي معني مرة أخري

do again	يفعل مرة أخري	redo	يعيد فعل
write again	يكتب مرة أخري	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
paint again	يدهن مرة أخري	repaint	يعيد دهان
clean again	ينظف مرة أخري	re clean	يعيد تنظيف
make again	يعمل مرة أخري	re make	يعيد عمل
read again	يقرأ مرة أخري	reread	يعيد قراءة

We painted our house again = We repainted our house.

She cleaned her room again = She recleaned her room.

Important Sentences

Lunch is ready.
الغداء جاهز.
I made some special food for us.
أنا صنعت بعض الطعام الخاص لنا.
It looks delicious.
الطعام يبدو لذيذًا.
I think we grow rice in Egypt.
أنا أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.
I think we raise chickens in Egypt.
أنا أعتقد أننا نربي الدجاج في مصر.
Egyptian farmers produce many things.
المزارعون المصريون ينتجون العديد من الأشياء.
What foods do we produce in Egypt?
ما الأطعمة التي ننتجها في مصر؟
We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes.
نحن ننتج الخضروات مثل البصل والبطاطس والطماطم.
I do a lot of sport at school.
أنا أقوم بالكثير من الرياضة في المدرسة.
I really like walking because...
أنا حقًا أحب المشي لأنني...
I don't eat candy.
أنا لا أتناول الحلوى.
My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.
فواكهي المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ.
My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake.
أمي تصنع مخفوق موز رائع.
I'm in a wheelchair basketball team.
أنا في فريق كرة سلة للكراسي المتحركة.
We practice three times every week.
نحن نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع.
I want to drink more water.
أنا أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء.
I play football in the park.
أنا ألعب كرة القدم في الحديقة.

I think I'm healthy.
أنا أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة.
I go walking in the desert with my dad.
أنا أذهب للمشي في الصحراء مع والدي.
Dad is a scientist.
والدي يكون عالم.
He likes looking at animals and plants.
هو يحب النظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.
I don't like cola.
أنا لا أحب الكولا.
I love burgers, but I only eat one a week.
أنا أحب البرجر، لكنني أتناول واحدة فقط في الأسبوع.
The most important man in China was the emperor.
الإمبراطور كان أهم رجل في الصين.
Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
تشينغ كان جيدًا جدًا في زراعة الأشياء والاعتناء بحديقته.
Where is your plant?
نباتك أين هو؟
The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.
Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.
الصيادون يصطادون آلاف الأسماك في البحر.
Domiati cheese is very famous.
جبنة الدمياطي مشهورة جدًا.
Life is good in Damietta.
الحياة في دمياط جيدة.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 1

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. Farmers are very .... for us.
a. important b. bad c. ugly d. hungry
2. Farmers .... food for us to eat.
a. damage b. produce c. play d. see
3. They grow ....and onions.
a. carrots b. lettuce c. tomatoes d. trees
4. They raise ....to get eggs.
a. goats b. sheep c. chickens d. cows

(B)

1. .... are living things.
a. Tables b. books c. Chairs d. Plants
2. Some plants are ....and some are small.
a. big b. ugly c. sad d. terrible
3. Plants need water to.................. .
a. swim b. wash c. grow d. eat
4. We need to .... plants.
a. take care of b. cut c. wash d. damage

(C)

1. Egyptian Farmers produce .... things.
a. bad b. good c. a few d. many
2. They plant .... and fruits.
a. trees b. flowers c. vegetables d. grass
3. They plant tomatoes .... and potatoes.
a. lettuce b. onions c. carrots d. trees
4. They also raise.................. .
a. chickens b. cows c. dogs d. donkeys

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. We get sugar from ....
a onions b sugarcane c trees d peppers
2. .... are my favourite fruit.
a Potatoes b Mangoes c Peppers d Onions
3. We have .... main meals وجبات every day.
a one b two c three d ten
4. Farmers raise .... for eggs.
a cows b donkeys c goats d chickens

5. Egypt is a great ....

ⓐ country ⓑ city ⓒ town ⓓ village

5. Egyptian farmers .... a lot of fruit and vegetables.

ⓐ win ⓑ grow ⓒ study ⓓ smell

6. The food looks .... I like it very much.

ⓐ bad ⓑ sad ⓒ delicious ⓓ tall

7. We have .... in the afternoon.

ⓐ breakfast ⓑ lunch ⓒ dinner ⓓ supper

8. Tomatoes and onions are ....

ⓐ toys ⓑ vegetables ⓒ fruits ⓓ books

9. .... are red vegetables.

ⓐ potatoes ⓑ Watermelons ⓒ Cucumbers ⓓ Tomatoes

10. What .... do we produce in Egypt? - Potatoes and tomatoes

ⓐ food ⓑ clothes ⓒ animals ⓓ birds

10. We usually have .... in the morning

ⓐ breakfast ⓑ dinner ⓒ lunch ⓓ supper

11. This food comes from our ...., Egypt.

ⓐ village ⓑ town ⓒ city ⓓ country

12. We like to eat fruit and vegetables. We are ....

ⓐ healthy ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ happy ⓓ bad

13. Dad is a .... and he likes looking at animals and plants.

ⓐ driver ⓑ chef ⓒ scientist ⓓ pilot

14. Ahmed can't walk so he has a ....

ⓐ bike ⓑ wheelchair ⓒ car ⓓ plane

15. I walk to my grandma's house. I go there ....

ⓐ by car ⓑ by bike ⓒ buy taxi ⓓ on foot

16. I don't eat candy, It is ....

ⓐ healthy ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ happy ⓓ bad

17. My favorite .... are bananas and watermelon.

ⓐ fruits ⓑ vegetables ⓒ books ⓓ clothes

18. My mom makes a/ an .... banana milkshake!

ⓐ awesome ⓑ not good ⓒ bad ⓓ ugly

19. I drink cola, but It isnt ....

ⓐ healthy ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ happy ⓓ bad

20. "...................." means to paint again.

ⓐ Repaint ⓑ Paint ⓒ Painting ⓓ Painted

21. He is good ....looking after his garden.

ⓐ for ⓑ at ⓒ of ⓓ next

22. The.................... is someone who is like a king.
ⓐ teacher ⓑ farmer ⓒ emperor ⓓ vet
23. Someone who is .... , does not lie.
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ ugly ⓒ honest ⓓ happy
24. The emperor lives in an awesome ....
ⓐ hospital ⓑ palace ⓒ restaurant ⓓ bank
25. I try to win the.................... .
ⓐ lesson ⓑ exam ⓒ test ⓓ competition
26. I .... my plant every day to help them grow.
ⓐ wash ⓑ water ⓒ leave ⓓ eat
27. My brother is .... planting trees. He likes trees very much.
ⓐ good at ⓑ bad at ⓒ terrible at ⓓ lazy at
28. We put .... in the soil to grow plants.
ⓐ clothes ⓑ seeds ⓒ tables ⓓ food
29. My uncle is a .... he looks after plants
ⓐ dentist ⓑ vet ⓒ gardener ⓓ doctor
30. About one and a half million people .... in Damietta.
ⓐ die ⓑ catch ⓒ try ⓓ live
31. Domiati cheese is very.................... .
ⓐ famous ⓑ bad ⓒ dirty ⓓ sweet
32. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in.................... .
ⓐ nutrients ⓑ cars ⓒ people ⓓ sugar
33. Fishermen catch thousands of .... in the sea.
ⓐ cows ⓑ goats ⓒ fish ⓓ birds
34. .... is governorate in Egypt.
ⓐ London ⓑ New York ⓒ Paris ⓓ Damietta
35. Damietta is .... for cheese.
ⓐ sad ⓑ ugly ⓒ famous ⓓ happy
36. My uncle is a ....he catches a lot of fish in the sea.
ⓐ vet ⓑ doctor ⓒ fisherman ⓓ driver
37. .... and potatoes are my favourite vegetables.
ⓐ Tomatoes ⓑ Grabs ⓒ Mangoes ⓓ Guavas
38. Damietta is a .... in Egypt.
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ governorate ⓓ town
39. The .... usually grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes and wheat.
ⓐ farmers ⓑ doctors ⓒ teachers ⓓ vets

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

make - football - cola - play- week

Omar is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He practices three times every (1) .... He drinks (2) ...., but he wants to drink more water. He doesn't (3) .... video games because he is very busy. He plays basketball and he plays (4) .... in the park.

fish - good - grow - live - bad

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can (1) .... rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousand of (2) .... in the sea. About one and a half million people (3) .... in this part of Egypt. Life is (4) .... in Damietta!

garden - palace - honest - lie - flowers

Once upon a time, there was a rich emperor. He and his family lived in a (1) .... He was (2) .... and all people loved him. He had a very beautiful (3) .... and it was full of many (4) ....

but - play - and - times - basketball

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three (1) .... every week. I drink cola, (2)................. I want to drink more water. I don't (3) .... video games because I'm very busy. I play (4) .... and I play football in the park.

delicious - Farmers - Doctors - grow - fruits

We produce many foods in Egypt. We (1) .... rice, onions, and tomatoes. (2) .... grow many things we eat every day. Egypt produces (3) .... like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Food is (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

In China, an old emperor wanted to choose the new emperor. He gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most **beautiful** plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Cheng won because the seeds were........................ .

a. dead b. good c. lazy d. nice

2. The underlined word "**beautiful**" means...................... .

a. bad b. ugly c. lazy d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Chang win?

....

4. Where was the emperor?

....

I'm Maryam. I think I'm healthy because I do a lot of sports at the club. I practice tennis three times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. Also I don't eat candy. I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelons. My mom makes <u>**awesome**</u> food and banana milkshake. My sister Dina likes fruit. She likes apples and mangoes very much.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "**awesome**" means........................

a. bad b. wonderful c. unhealthy d. late

2. Maryam does a lot of...................... at the club.

a. buildings b. jobs c. sports d. foods

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are Dina's favorite fruits?

....

4. What does mom make?

....

Malak lives in Damietta. It is a beautiful part of Egypt. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Malak's dad is a fisherman. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Malak's uncle raise cows, goats, and sheep in his farm in Damietta governorate. She likes Domiati cheese because it is very famous.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Malak's dad is a ....

a. fisherman b. teacher c. scientist d. nurse

2. She likes ....

a. water b. cola c. juice d. cheese

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where do Maryam and her mom go walking?

....

4. What does mom make ?

....

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We grow different kinds in Egypt. Mangoes grow in summer. Watermelon is a sweet fruit that grows in the summer. Banana is a yellow-coloured fruit. We get sugar from sugarcane . Fruits are delicious and **healthy**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... different kinds of fruit in Egypt.

a. grow b. study c. play d. smell

2. The word **healthy** is the opposite of ....

a. tasty b. nice c. unhealthy d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plant do we get sugar from?

....

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. I want to go swimming, ...(and) it is raining.
2. Maryam likes ice cream .... (so) chocolate.
3. After school, I do my homework .... (but) I eat lunch.
4. I practice football .... (but) I walk home from school every day.
5. My father is Egyptian, ... (and) my mother is American.
6. He speaks English, ... (and) he can't speak Chinese.
7. I want to play football, ... (because) I hurt my leg.
8. I can speak English .... (but) French.
9. I want to go to work, ... (so) I am ill.
10. We eat healthy food .... (but) exercise.
11. Dad is a scientist .... (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.
12. We .... (painted) our house this means we painted it again.
13. She .... (recleaned) her room again.
14. I want to watch TV, ... (and) It is time to sleep.
15. My homework has a lot of mistakes. I need to .... (do) it.
16. I didn't understand the lesson, I will .... (reread) it again.

6. Punctuate the following

1. the palace is where an emperor lives

....

2. we produce vegetables and fruits

....

3. Damietta is famous for domiati cheese

....

4. egyptian farmers produce many things

....

5. chang was good at growing

6. egyptian farmers raise chickens

7. which food comes from our country

8. What foods do we produce in Egypt

PARAGRAPHS

Healthy lifestyle

I am Samy. I'm healthy. I do sports at the club. Every Friday, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.

نمط حياة صحي

أنا سامي. أنا بصحة جيدة. أمارس الرياضة في النادي. كل يوم جمعة، أمشي إلى منزل جدتي مع عائلتي. أحب المشي كثيراً. لا أتناول الحلوى، ولكن أحب الفواكه. فاكهتي المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ.

A scientist

My dad is a scientist. I like this job. I love looking at animals and plants. I go walking in the desert with my dad. It's a very interesting job. It's also a difficult job. It's very hot in the desert.

عالم

والدي عالم. أحب هذه المهنة. أحب مشاهدة الحيوانات والنباتات. أذهب للمشي في الصحراء مع والدي. إنها وظيفة ممتعة جداً. إنها أيضاً وظيفة صعبة. الجو حار جداً في الصحراء.

Damietta governorate

I love Egypt . I live in Damietta in Egypt. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers grow a lot of different fruits. They can grow grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate. We grow many crops.

محافظة دمياط

أحب مصر. أعيش في دمياط في مصر. الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية. يزرع المزارعون العديد من الفواكه المختلفة. يمكنهم زراعة العنب والجوافة. يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك في البحر. تعيش الأبقار والماعز والأغنام في محافظة دمياط. نحن نزرع العديد من المحاصيل.

Honest person

I love my friend Samy. He is very honest. He doesn't tell lie. All people love him. He is very a good person. We all should be honest and kind.

شخص صادق

أحب صديقي سامي. إنه صادق جداً. لا يكذب أبداً. جميع الناس يحبونه. إنه شخص جيد جداً. يجب أن نكون جميعاً صادقين ولطفاء.



Unit 2 Desert Animals حيوانات الصحراء

Key vocabulary :

desert	fennec fox	crocodile	eagle	snake
صحراء	ثعلب الفنك	تمساح	نسر	ثعبان
lizard	spider	camel	pelican	feather
سحلية	عنكبوت	جمل	بجعة	ريشة
flat feet	Camel	horse	noisy	perfect
أقدام مسطحة	جمل	حصان	مزعج	مثالي
bear	beak	pelican	claw	paw
دب	منقار	بجعة	مخلب الحيوان	كف الحيوان
rhim gazelle	fennec fox	coat	horns	heat
غزال الريم	ثعلب الفنك	فرو	قرون	حرارة

Grammar

Comparative

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الاخر في صفة قصيرة مكونة من مقطع واحد نتبع الاتي

1. short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

اسم + (is / are) + (adj – er) + than + اسم

- The horse is faster than the camel.

عند اضافة الـ er الي نهاية الصفة نتبع الاتي :

2. Long Adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الاخر في صفة طويلة مكونة من أكثر من مقطع نتبع الاتي :

اسم + (is / are) + more (أكثر) + long adj (صفة طويلة) + than + اسم

اسم + (is / are) + less (أقل) + long adj (صفة طويلة) + than + اسم

- The crocodiles are more dangerous than the fish.
- A fox is less dangerous than a snake.

How + adj

من الممكن ان نكون ادوات استفهام جديده باستخدام How ثم صفه بعد منها بمعنى كم ... بس الصفة هنا بدون اضافات .

How + adj	معناها	استخدامها	نجاوب عليها بـ	معناها
How tall	كم الطول	تسأل عن الطول الرأسي	cm / m	سنتيمتر / متر
How long	كم الطول	تسأل عن الطول الأفقي	cm / m	سنتيمتر / متر
How heavy	كم الوزن	تسأل عن الوزن	kg	كيلو جرام
How fast	كم السرعة	تسأل عن السرعة	kph	كيلومتر في الساعه

- How tall is the fennec fox? – It is 20 cm.
- How heavy is the horse ? – It is 380 kg.

Important Sentences

A lot of animals live in our country.
تعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في بلدنا.
The crocodile is huge and scary.
التمساح ضخم ومخيف.
Spiders are very helpful.
العناكب مفيدة جداً.
The pelican eats small fish.
البجع يأكل السمك الصغير.
Camels are amazing.
الجمال مذهلة.
Camels are beautiful, strong animals.
الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.
They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.
إنها تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لعبور الصحراء.
Camels are perfect for the desert.
الجمال مثالية للصحراء.
Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
تمتلك الجمال أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة حتى تتمكن من المشي على الرمال.
Camels can live without water for a long time.
يمكن للجمال العيش بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.
Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.
تمتلك الجمال طرقاً خاصة لإغلاق أنوفها وعيونها لمنع دخول الرمل.
Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.
تبدو غزلان الريم جميلة جداً.
Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert.
تعيش غزلان الريم في صحراء الصحراء الكبرى.
Rhim gazelles walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat.
تتجول غزلان الريم بحثاً عن العشب والأوراق والنباتات لتأكلها.

Rhim gazelles have big ears and long horns.
تمتلك غزلان الريم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.
They have yellow-white coats.
لديهم فراء أصفر- أبيض.
Rhim gazelles' coat protects them from the sun.
يحميهم فراء غزلان الريم من الشمس.
Rhim gazelles don't need to drink a lot of water.
لا تحتاج غزلان الريم إلى شرب الكثير من الماء.
The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.
يعيش ثعلب الفنك في صحاري شمال أفريقيا.
The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes.
ثعلب الفنك أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى.
The fennec fox has really big ears.
يمتلك ثعلب الفنك آذان كبيرة جداً.
The fennec needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.
يحتاج الفنك إلى آذان كبيرة لسماع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.
The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.
يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات والسحالي والفئران الصغيرة.
During the day, it is hot in the desert.
خلال النهار، يكون الجو حاراً في الصحراء.
The fennec fox loses heat from its ears during the day.
يفقد ثعلب الفنك الحرارة من آذانه خلال النهار.
At night, it is cold in the desert.
في الليل، يكون الجو بارداً في الصحراء.
The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.
يحافظ الفراء السميك لثعلب الفنك على دفئه.
The fennec fox lives in the desert.
يعيش ثعلب الفنك في الصحراء

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 2

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. The fennec fox lives in the.................... .

a. river b. dessert c. desert d. lake

2. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.

a. smaller b. bigger c. longer d. taller

3.The fennec fox needs .... ears to hear insects.

a. small b. tiny c. short d. big

4. It loses heat from its.................... .

a. mouth b. legs c. ears d. nose

(B)

1. The bear and the pelican are in the.................... .

a. forest b. river c. lake d. desert

2. They are looking at a big .... fish.

a. juicy b. nice c. red d. good

3. The .... says sadly, "I'm sorry".

a. pelican b. bear c. cat d. fish

4. The bear is .... and bigger than the pelican.

a. smaller b. stronger c. faster d. longer

(C)

1. Some .... live in our country.

a. animals b. people c. trees d. fish

2. The .... is huge and scary.

a. crab b. snake c. pelican d. crocodile

3. Spiders are very.................... .

a. helpful b. cute c. short d. dangerous

4. .... like spiders.

a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Farmers d. Scientist

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Farmers like spiders. They are very ....

ⓐ helpful ⓑ small ⓒ bad ⓓ ugly

2. .... about the snake and the crocodile?

ⓐ When ⓑ What ⓒ Where ⓓ Who

3. The pelican eats small ....

ⓐ fish ⓑ cats ⓒ dogs ⓓ elephants

4. Snakes and the crocodiles .... the number of these small animals.

ⓐ eat ⓑ increse ⓒ see ⓓ control

5. The crocodile lives in the ....
ⓐ river ⓑ desert ⓒ forest ⓓ street

6. The .... can fly in the sky.
ⓐ crocodile ⓑ fox ⓒ eagle ⓓ lizard

7. Spiders are very helpful because they .... insects.
ⓐ eat ⓑ drink ⓒ watch ⓓ smell

8. Be careful this snake is really ....
ⓐ cute ⓑ beautiful ⓒ ugly ⓓ scary

9. Camels can carry people to cross the ....
ⓐ sea ⓑ desert ⓒ river ⓓ lake

10. Camels are amazing and ....
ⓐ weak ⓑ small ⓒ beautiful ⓓ tiny

11. Camel milk is ....
ⓐ salty ⓑ delicious ⓒ bad ⓓ not good

12. We can use camel fur to make ....
ⓐ food ⓑ clothes ⓒ toys ⓓ furniture

13. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on ....
ⓐ grass ⓑ rocks ⓒ mud ⓓ sand

14. Camels can live without .... for a long time.
ⓐ food ⓑ sleep ⓒ water ⓓ sunlight

15. Camels can close their noses and eyes to stop .... from coming in.
ⓐ water ⓑ flies ⓒ wind ⓓ sand

16. Camels can be very .... and they can get angry.
ⓐ quiet ⓑ calm ⓒ friendly ⓓ noisy

17. Horses have large, beautiful .... They see well.
ⓐ tails ⓑ hooves ⓒ eyes ⓓ ears

18. Horses have strong .... to cut grass.
ⓐ hooves ⓑ teeth ⓒ hair ⓓ legs

19. Horses like to eat .... and drink fresh water.
ⓐ meat ⓑ grass ⓒ fish ⓓ fruits

20. The pelican has one ....
ⓐ leg ⓑ wing ⓒ beak ⓓ eye

21. A pelican and and a bear are in the...............to eat fish.
ⓐ sky ⓑ home ⓒ street ⓓ river

22. The bear is...............than the cat.
ⓐ smaller ⓑ bigger ⓒ shorter ⓓ less dangerous

23.The .... is stronger than the pelican.







ⓐ mouse ⓑ cat ⓒ bear ⓓ fish

24. This watermelon is very.................. . It's full of juice.
ⓐ salty ⓑ juicy ⓒ dry ⓓ bad

25. The bear is .... because it gave the fish to the pelican.
ⓐ bad ⓑ terrible ⓒ ugly ⓓ greedy

26. The bear was hungry. It was looking for something to ....
ⓐ drink ⓑ smell ⓒ eat ⓓ play

27. The bear has sharp ....
ⓐ hair ⓑ legs ⓒ fingers ⓓ claws

28. The fennec fox lives in the ....
ⓐ sea ⓑ desert ⓒ sky ⓓ trees

29. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .... to protect them from sun.
ⓐ tails ⓑ beaks ⓒ wings ⓓ coats

30. Rhim gazelles have big .... and long horns.
ⓐ ears ⓑ noses ⓒ arms ⓓ teeth

31. Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara.................... .
ⓐ Mountains ⓑ forests ⓒ Desert ⓓ Street

32. Rhim gazelles eat .... , leaves, and plants to.
ⓐ fish ⓑ meat ⓒ grass ⓓ insects

33. Rhim gazelles have .... coats.
ⓐ brown ⓑ black ⓒ yellow-white ⓓ gray

34. Rhim gazelles' coat protects them from the ....
ⓐ wind ⓑ rain ⓒ snow ⓓ sun

35. Rhim gazelles don't need to drink a lot of ....
ⓐ milk ⓑ juice ⓒ water ⓓ soda

36. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.
ⓐ larger ⓑ bigger ⓒ smaller ⓓ heavier

37. The fennec fox has really big ....
ⓐ paws ⓑ tails ⓒ eyes ⓓ ears

38. The fennec fox eats .... , lizards, and small mice.
ⓐ fruits ⓑ vegetables ⓒ plants ⓓ insects

38. During the day, it is .... in the desert.
ⓐ hot ⓑ cold ⓒ rainy ⓓ windy

39. The fennec fox loses heat from its .... during the day.
ⓐ paws ⓑ ears ⓒ tail ⓓ nose

40. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it ....
ⓐ cool ⓑ warm ⓒ dry ⓓ clean







3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

scary - makes - controls - insects - job

Some animals like snakes and crocodiles are dangerous. But they do a very important (1) .... They eat (2) .... , birds and lizards. This (3) .... the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are (4) .... or ugly, but they are all important.

grass - fresh - eyes - look - beautiful

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. Horses eat (1) .... and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful (2) .... .They can live in the desert, but they need people to (3) .... after them. Horses can (4) .... for 25 – 30 years.

describe - hungry - paw - beak - reaches

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very (1) .... They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.The bear (2) .... for the fish. It lifts its (3) .... The pelican opens its (4) .... It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

water - leaves - coats - horns - birds

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, (1) .... and plants to eat. They have big ears and long (2) .... They have yellow-white (3) .... They don't need to drink a lot of (4) ....

arms - scary - run - paws - fish

Bears are my favourite animals. They have strong (1) .... and sharp claws. They can (2) .... and swim. They eat fish. Bears have sharp teeth. They are (3) .... They eat (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it worm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at ....
a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

2. The fennec fox loses .... from its ears.
a. cold b. heat c. fur d. weight

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How heavy is the fennec fox ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

I went to the Pyramids last weekend with my family. I rode a beautiful camel. It was interesting. Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about ....

a.horses b. camels c. crocodiles d. spiders

2. The underlined word "strong' is the opposite of the word "....................".

a.perfect b.beautiful c. amazing d. weak

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How can camels help us ?

....

4. Why do camels have flat feet ?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. Ahmed is .... (fast) than Samy.
2. The crocodiles are .... (most) dangerous than the fish.
3. The camel is .... (tall) than the horse.
4. A fox is .... (dangerous) than a snake.
5. The horse is .... (fast) than the camel.
6. The fennec fox is smaller.......................... (then) other foxes.
7. How .... (long) is the horse ? - It is 380 kg.
8. The female eagle is bigger and .... (heavy) than the male.
9. How .... (taller) is the fennec fox? - It is 20 cm.
10. The eagle is .... (big) than the rat.
11. Pizza is...................... (delicious) than vegetables.
12. The airplane is faster .... (that) the bicycle.
13. How.......................... (taller) is the camel? - It is 2.0m.
14. A rabbit is......................... (small) than a dog.
15. Lions are .... (most) dangerous than cows.
16. How.......................... (faster) is the horse ? - t is 88 kph.
17. The train...................... (be) faster than the taxi.
18. The elephant is .... (big) than the tiger.

6. Punctuate the following.

1. how long is a rhim gazelle's horn

....

2. the bear is stronger than the pelican

3. the pelican looks scared

4. where does the fennec fox live

PARAGRAPHS

Horses

Horses
I love horses. They are strong and fast. Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert. They need people to look after them.

أحب الخيول. إنها قوية وسريعة. الخيول لها عيون كبيرة وجميلة. تأكل العشب وتشرب الماء العذب. يمكنها العيش في الصحراء. تحتاج إلى أشخاص لرعايتها.

Bears

Bears are my favourite animals. They have strong paws and sharp claws. They can run and swim. They eat fish. Bears have sharp teeth. They are scary.

الدببة هي حيواناتي المفضلة. لها مخالب قوية وحادة. يمكنها الجري والسباحة. تأكل الأسماك. الدببة لها أسنان حادة. إنها مخيفة.

Pelican

I love to see the pelican. It has two wings and a large beak. It likes to eat juicy fish. It can fly in the sky. It catches fish from the river.

أحب رؤية البجعة. لديها جناحان ومنقار كبير. تحب أكل السمك الطري. يمكنها الطيران في السماء. تصطاد السمك من النهر.

The Fennec Fox

I love the fennec fox. It lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It has big ears. It needs big ears to hear insects. It eats insects, lizards, and small mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram.

أحب ثعلب الفنك. يعيش في صحاري شمال إفريقيا. هو أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. له آذان كبيرة. يحتاج إلى آذان كبيرة ليسمع الحشرات. يأكل الحشرات والسحالي والفئران الصغيرة. يزن حوالي 1 كيلوجرام.

Camels

Camels are amazing animals. They are perfect for the desert. They are strong animals. They can live for a long time without water. They have large, flat feet. They can walk on the sand. They help people to cross the desert.

الجمال حيوانات مذهلة. إنها مثالية للصحراء. إنها حيوانات قوية. يمكنها العيش لفترة طويلة دون ماء. لها أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة. يمكنها المشي على الرمال. تساعد الناس على عبور الصحراء.

Rhim Gazelles

Rhim gazelles are very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears. They have long horns. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

غزلان الريم جميلة جدًا. تعيش في صحراء الصحراء الكبرى. لها آذان كبيرة. لها قرون طويلة. لها فراء أصفر - أبيض لحمايتها من الشمس. لا تحتاج إلى شرب الكثير من الماء.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants? لماذا نزرع النباتات ؟

Key vocabulary :

leaf	seeds	soil	tomato fruits	orange tree
ورقة شجر	بذور	تربة	ثمرة الطماطم	شجر البرتقال
rose	sunflower	bean plant	germination	daisy
وردة حمراء	زهرة دوار الشمس	نبات الفول	عملية الانبات	أقحوان / لؤلؤ
tamarisk	reed	living things	lotus flower	acacia
الطرفاء	جريد / القصب	كائنات حية	زهرة اللوتس	السنط / الصمغ العربي
habitat	agricultural	desert	rivers	lakes
موطن / بيئة	زراعي	صحراء / صحراوي	أنهار	بحيرات
polluted air	rainwater	dry	grandparents	farm
هواء ملوث	ماء المطر	جاف	الجد و الجدة	مزرعة
special	land	life	difficult	lemons
خاص / مميز	أرض	حياة	صعب	ليمون
life cycle	sunlight	get taller	sandals	papyrus
دورة حياة	ضوء الشمس	يطول	صندل	نبات البردي

Plants , trees and habitats

bean plant	orange tree	agricultural habitat
نبات الفول	شجرة البرتقال	البيئة الزراعية
tamarisk	acacia	desert habitat
الطرفاء	السنط / الصمغ العربي	البيئة الصحراوية
reed	lotus flower	rivers and lakes
قصب / جريد	زهرة اللوتس	بيئة الأنهار و البحيرات

Grammar

Superlative
لو المقارنة دي بين تلاته أو أكتر بنسميها (تفضيل)

1. short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

عند تفضيل واحد علي مجموعة نستخدم كلمة the و نضيف للصفة القصيرة est

اسم + (is / are) + the + (صفة- est) ....

- The sunflower is the tallest flower.
- The giraffe is the tallest animal.

2. Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

اسم + (is / are) + the most + (صفة طويلة) ....
اسم + (is / are) + the least + (صفة طويلة) ....

the most الأكثر the least الأقل

- The rose is the most beautiful flower.
- The snake is the most dangerous animal.

How big ??
بنستخدمها للسؤال عن الحجم (كم الحجم)

How big is the daisy ? - It is about 4 cm.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 3

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
a. seeds b. roots c. leaves d. shots
2. We can take the seeds to grow new.......................... .
a. onions b. bananas c. tomatoes d. carrots
3. We plant a seed in the .... and the plant grows.
a. sea b. sand c. soil d. water
4. .... are green before they are red.
a. Onions b. Bananas c. Tomatoes d. Carrots

(B)

1. Lucas lives on a .... in the United States.
a. village b. city c. farm d. town
2. He lived with his ....
a. grandparents b. friends c. aunt d. uncle
3. They .... many fruits like oranges and lemons.
a. sold b. grew c. made d. did
4. They are very .... and they have a good life.
a. sad b. happy c. angry

(c)

1. Papyrus is a very .... plant.
a. ugly b. special c. nice d. bad
2. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make..................... .
a. paper b. clothes c. food d. tables
3. Papyrus needs a lot of water and .... weather to grow quickly.
a. cold b. snowy c. windy d. warm
4. It .... in the Nile Delta near the Nile river.
a. dies b. grows c. waters d. plays

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The roots grow ....the soil.
ⓐ above ⓑ under ⓒ on ⓓ next
2. Tomatoes have.........................inside.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ roots ⓒ shoots ⓓ leaves
3. Let's havea .... tomato for lunch !
ⓐ red ⓑ yellow ⓒ pink ⓓ black
4. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called......................... .

ⓐ cutting ⓑ information ⓒ germination ⓓ fraction

5. The seed needs sunlight and .... so it can grow.
ⓐ milk ⓑ tea ⓒ coffee ⓓ water

6. Tomatoes have .... inside.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ roots ⓒ shoots ⓓ leaves

7. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
ⓐ yellow ⓑ pink ⓒ green ⓓ black

8. Plants need .... from the sun.
ⓐ money ⓑ food ⓒ sunlight ⓓ soil

9. A .... is a place where living things live and grow.
ⓐ habitat ⓑ fur ⓒ library ⓓ cinema

10. A lotus flower grows near the .... It needs a lot of water.
ⓐ desert ⓑ rocks ⓒ river ⓓ mountains

11. Farmers work in the .... habitats
ⓐ river ⓑ desert ⓒ lakes ⓓ agricultural

12. Farmers grow .... for us to eat.
ⓐ clothes ⓑ toys ⓒ food ⓓ furniture

13. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of ....
ⓐ sunlight ⓑ water ⓒ wind ⓓ soil

14. There is not much .... in the desert habitat.
ⓐ sunlight ⓑ rain ⓒ sand ⓓ wind

15. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of ....
ⓐ sunlight ⓑ soil ⓒ water ⓓ wind

16. Bean plants grow in the .... habitat.
ⓐ desert ⓑ river ⓒ agricultural ⓓ lake

17. Orange trees are found in the .... habitat.
ⓐ city ⓑ mountains ⓒ agricultural ⓓ desert

18. In the desert habitats, you can find ....
ⓐ mango trees. ⓑ reed ⓒ bean plant ⓓ tamarisk

19. We can find .... in desert habitats.
ⓐ reed ⓑ bean plant ⓒ orange trees ⓓ acacia

20. Reed grows near the .... and lakes.
ⓐ mountains ⓑ desert ⓒ fields ⓓ rivers

21. When there is no water in the land, it becomes ....
ⓐ wet ⓑ dry ⓒ good ⓓ fresh

22. They used rainwater to ....the seeds.
ⓐ water ⓑ sell ⓒ bring ⓓ make

23. They used .... to water the seeds.

ⓐ rainwater ⓑ seawater ⓒ salty water ⓓ ocean water

24. The city has polluted .... and noise.
ⓐ water ⓑ air ⓒ soil ⓓ land

25. Lucas lives on a .... because he likes plants and animals.
ⓐ city ⓑ forest ⓒ mountain ⓓ farm

26. The land was very .... There weren't any plants or water.
ⓐ wet ⓑ dry ⓒ fertile ⓓ cold

27. There were no farms. No one wanted to .... in this place.
ⓐ work ⓑ visit ⓒ live ⓓ travel

28. They wanted to have a .... so they decided to buy some land.
ⓐ store ⓑ farm ⓒ park ⓓ factory

29. We grew many fruits like .... and lemons.
ⓐ carrots ⓑ oranges ⓒ tomatoes ⓓ onions

30. They are very .... of Lucas's grandparents. they love them.
ⓐ sad ⓑ angry ⓒ hungry ⓓ proud

31. Farmers used .... to make the land green.
ⓐ machines ⓑ animals ⓒ plants ⓓ water

32. The shoot starts to grow .... the soil.
ⓐ in ⓑ behind ⓒ above ⓓ under

33. Papyrus needs a lot of.................... to grow.
ⓐ water ⓑ coffee ⓒ milk ⓓ tea

34. ....is a very special plant.
ⓐ Paper ⓑ Papyrus ⓒ Sandals ⓓ Soil

35.The sunflower opens and ....the sun.
ⓐ closes ⓑ faces ⓒ puts ⓓ drops

36. Papyrus is famous as ancient Egyptians used it to make.............. .
ⓐ trees ⓑ baskets ⓒ hotels ⓓ houses

37. Ancient Egyptians made sandals and .... from papyrus.
ⓐ clothes ⓑ baskets ⓒ weapons ⓓ buildings

38. Papyrus needs a lot of .... and warm weather to grow quickly.
ⓐ soil ⓑ sunlight ⓒ water ⓓ air

39. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the .... River.
ⓐ Amazon ⓑ Mississippi ⓒ Nile ⓓ Yangtze

40. We plant the sunflower seed in ....
ⓐ water ⓑ sand ⓒ soil ⓓ rock

41. The seed germinates and it starts to grow .... under the soil.
ⓐ flowers ⓑ roots ⓒ leaves ⓓ shoot

42. The sunflower dies and drops its seeds to .... again.

ⓐ sleep ⓑ grow ⓒ wither ⓓ wash

43. The tomato plant grows leaves, flowers, and ....

ⓐ tomatoes ⓑ onions ⓒ okra ⓓ potatoes

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

farmer - fruits - seeds - water

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the (1) .... and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and (2) .... it every day. The roots grow (3) ....the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato (4) ....

roots - sun- After that - germinotes

First ,you plant the sunflower seed in soil.You put it in (1) .... and water it. Next the seed (2) ....and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (3) ....the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 months, it opens and faces the (4) ....

rainwater - blllion - life - green - grew

My grandparents had a farm. They (1) .... many fruits.They used (2) .... to water the plants. They needed about a (3).................. liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (4) ....

desert - lakes - water - grow

There is not much rain in the desert. Plants that live in the (1) .... do not need a lot of (2) .... .Farmers can't (3) .... plants there. the land there is very (4) ....

seed - soil - red - flowers - germination

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! They have leaves and (1) .... Tomatoes are green before they are (2) .... We plant a (3) .... and the plant grows.That is called (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony.Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows.We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A. Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The text is about "................... ".

a. flowers b. tomato plants c. mango trees d. peas plants

2. There are .... Inside tomatoes.

a. roots b.flowers c. plants d. seeds





B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text ina sentence.

....

4. What color are tomatoes before they are red ?

....

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live inthe desert don't need a lot of water.There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamorisk there.

A. Choose thecorrect answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can find acacia plant and .... in the desert.

a. reed b. tomarisk c. orange tree d. lotus flower

2. The text is about "......................".

a. Habitats b. Clothes c. Festivals d. Houses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?

....

4. What do farmers grow inthe agricultural habitat ?

....

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, butthey didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers.They grew many fruits and brought animals to the l and. Today, Adorn lives on the farm with his grandparents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His grandparent s are very proud of him.They use plants to make the land green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They planted millions of ....

a. seeds b.flowers c. farms d.crops

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's ....

a. friends b.paren c. grandparents d. sisters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land ?

....

4. What did they use to water the seeds ?

....

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as formers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing near the river.They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River.The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the

papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow.It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "........................".

a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes

2. Ancient Egyptians made .... from papyrus.

a. sweets b. sandals c. doors d. windows

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does papyrus need to grow ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. The daisy lives shorter .... (then) the rose.
2. The lion is the.............................. (dangerous) animal.
3. My city is the.............................. (nice) place to live.
4. I think the rose is the.................................. (beautiful) flower.
5. The sunflower is the........ .... (tall) flower.
6. What is the.......................... (big) animal in the world?
7. I have the.............................. (heavy) suitcase.
8. The elephant is .... (that) fattest animal.
9. The sunflower lives the .... (long).
10. The rose is the .... (more) beautiful flower.
11. The snake is the .... (dangerous) animal.
12. The sunflower is .... (tall) flower.
13. The cheetah is the .... (fast) animal.
14. The turtle is the .... (slow) animal.

6. Punctuate the following

1. why do plants need sunlight and water

....

2. which plant is the tallest

....

3. Papyrus is a very special plant.

....

4. Ancient Egyptians worked very hard.

....

5. Tomatoes have seeds inside.

....

PARAGRAPHS

Plants and Seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and water it every day. The roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

النباتات والبذور

تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها. يمكننا أخذ البذور وزراعة طماطم جديدة. نزرع بذرة ونسقيها كل يوم. تنمو الجذور تحت التربة. تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.

Different Flowers

There are many different flowers such as sunflower, rose, and daisy. The sunflower is the biggest flower. The rose lives longer than the daisy. The rose is taller than the daisy. The sunflower is taller than the rose.

زهور مختلفة

هناك العديد من الزهور المختلفة مثل دوار الشمس، والورد، والأقحوان. دوار الشمس هو أكبر زهرة. الورد يعيش لفترة أطول من الأقحوان. الورد أطول من الأقحوان. دوار الشمس أطول من الورد.

Different Plant Habitats

There are many plant habitats. In agricultural habitats, farmers grow food for us to eat. Lotus flowers and reed plants grow near rivers and lakes. They need a lot of water to grow. In desert habitats, there is not much rain.

مواطن نباتات مختلفة

هناك العديد من مواطن النباتات. في المواطن الزراعية، يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنأكله. تنمو أزهار اللوتس ونباتات القصب بالقرب من الأنهار والبحيرات. تحتاج هذه النباتات إلى الكثير من الماء لتنمو. في المواطن الصحراوية، لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار.

Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It grows in the Nile Delta. The ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They used papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water. It is a very useful plant.

نبات البردي

البردي هو نبات مميز جداً. ينمو في دلتا النيل. استخدم المصريون القدماء البردي لصنع الورق. استخدموا نباتات البردي لصنع الصنادل والسلال. يحتاج البردي إلى الكثير من الماء. إنه نبات مفيد جداً.

Unit 4



I feel good أشعر أنني بخير

Key vocabulary :

kitchen	living room	At home	balcony	cloth
مطبخ	حجرة معيشة	فى المنزل	شرفة (بلكونة)	قماش
bathroom	dining room	bedroom	street	tent
دورة مياه	حجرة الطعام	حجرة النوم	شارع	خيمة
apartment	house	houseboat	kitchen	bedroom
شقة سكنية	منزل	منزل عائم	المطبخ	غرفة النوم
living room	bathroom	school	dinnig room	shopping mall
حجرة المعيشة	الحمام	مدرسة	حجرة الطعام	مركز تسويق
supermarket	post office	office	Places	museum
سوبر ماركت	مكتب بريد	مكتب عمل	أماكن	متحف
map	sick	couch	hospital	clothes
خريطة	مريض	كنبة	المستشفى	الملابس
Turn left	tourist boat	summer	Sahara Desert	sahl Hasheesh
اتجه يسارا	قارب سياحي	فصل الصيف	الصحراء الكبرى	سهل حشيش
safary	bazaar	Hurghada	tourist	fresh
رحلات سفاري	بازار	الغردقة	سائح	طازج
Turn right	Go straight ahead	giving directions	It's on the corner	Take the second right
اتجه يمينا	سر بشكل مستقيم	اعطاء الاتجاهات	انه فى الزاوية	خذ المنعطف الثاني يمين

Grammar

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان

نستخدمها لتحديد مكان شئ ما .

in front of	on	in	behind
أمام	علي	في	خلف
between	next to	under	above
بين	بجانب	تحت	أعلي

Asking about place ? السؤال عن المكان

Where + is + مكان ...... ?

عند الاجابة نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان ...

Where is your school?
My school is between the shopping mall and the hospital.

كينج المرح

Important Sentences

We cook food in the kitchen.
نطبخ الطعام في المطبخ.
We sleep in the bedroom.
ننام في غرفة النوم.
I talk to my family and watch television in the living room.
أتحدث مع عائلتي و أشاهد التلفاز في غرفة المعيشة.
I take a shower in the bathroom.
أستحم في الحمام.
I love to sit on the balcony; I can see the people in the street.
أحب الجلوس على الشرفة؛ أستطيع رؤية الناس في الشارع.
I eat dinner with my family in the dining room.
أتناول العشاء مع عائلتي في غرفة الطعام.
I can relax and do my homework quietly.
أستطيع الاسترخاء و أداء واجباتي المنزلية بهدوء.
My favorite room is the living room with the balcony.
غرفتي المفضلة هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة.
My aunt moved to a new apartment.
انتقلت عمتي إلى شقة جديدة.
My friend and her family live on a houseboat.
صديقتي وعائلتها يعيشون على قارب سكني.
In the desert, some people live in a tent.
في الصحراء، يعيش بعض الناس في خيمة.
A tent is made of cloth.
الخيمة مصنوعة من القماش.
I love living in a house because it is a big building.
أحب العيش في بيت لأنه مبنى كبير.
I can play outside the house with my brother and sister.
أستطيع اللعب خارج البيت مع أخي وأختي.
I live in a village next to the Nile.
أعيش في قرية بجانب النيل.
The supermarket is a place where we buy food.
السوبر ماركت هو مكان نشتري منه الطعام.

The post office is a place where we send letters.
مكتب البريد هو مكان نرسل منه الرسائل.
The school is a place where I learn.
المدرسة هي مكان أتعلم فيه.
The office is a place where my mom and dad work.
المكتب هو مكان يعمل فيه والدي.
The hospital is a place where we go when we are sick.
المستشفى هو مكان نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.
The shopping mall is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.
المركز التجاري هو مكان أشتري منه الملابس والأحذية.
My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer.
صديقي شريف يعيش على قارب في الصيف.
They travel up and down the Nile.
يسافرون صعوداً و هبوطاً على النيل.
He sees many interesting places and meets people from all over the world.
يرى أماكن مثيرة للاهتمام ويلتقي بأناس من جميع أنحاء العالم.
Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river.
رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز إلى النهر.
He swam and saved the child.
سبح و أنقذ الطفل.
I live in a city called Hurghada.
أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة.
It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.
تقع في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر.
It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
لديها بعض البيوت الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.
Mona works at the supermarket near my house.
منى تعمل في السوبر ماركت بالقرب من منزلي.
Mona checks that the food is fresh.
منى تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 4

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. Hafsa lives in.................. .
a. Hurghada b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Giza
2. There are some beautiful houses and .... in Hurghada.
a. shops b. schools c. bazaars d. parks
3. There are .... in Hurghada.
a. pyramids b. beaches c. offices d. parks
4. Tourists go on .... in the Sahara Desert.
a. safaris b. holidays c. a trip d. journeys

(B)

1. Ali lives on a / an .... in Hurghada.
a. houseboat b. apartment c. tent d. office
2. His .... work on a tourist boot.
a. uncle b. parents c. aunt d. brother
3. Ali goes with his parents to work in the ....
a. winter b. fall c. summer d. autumn
4. Ali's parents travel up and down the.................... .
a. lake b. sea c. ocean d. Nile

(C)

1. Reem lives in a small...................... .
a. house b. village c. city d. tent
2. Her school is .... the park.
a. on b. next to c. above d. near
3. Reem often plays .... in the park.
a. football b. basketball c. tennis d. volleyball
4. Reem plays in the park with her.................... .
a. friends b. mom c. dad d. sister

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. My friend loves to live......................water. He lives on a houseboat.
ⓐ off ⓑ on ⓒ next ⓓ in
2. I have a big balcony in my new......................... .
ⓐ street ⓑ apartment ⓒ tent ⓓ nest
3. The tent is made of...................... .
ⓐ cloth ⓑ wood ⓒ glass ⓓ grass
4. We cook food in the ....
ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ bathroom ⓓ living room
5. People sleep in the ....

ⓐ kitchen ⓑ dining room ⓒ bedroom ⓓ balcony

6. I talk to my family and watch television in the ....
ⓐ bathroom ⓑ living room ⓒ kitchen ⓓ bedroom

7. In the desert, some people live in a /an ....
ⓐ houseboat ⓑ apartment ⓒ tent ⓓ bathroom

8. I take a shower in the ....
ⓐ bedroom ⓑ dining room ⓒ living room ⓓ bathroom

9. I love to sit on the .... to see the people in the street.
ⓐ kitchen ⓑ balcony ⓒ tent ⓓ dining room

10. I eat dinner with my family in the ....
ⓐ living room ⓑ bedroom ⓒ dining room ⓓ bathroom

11. My friend and her family live on a .... because she loves living on the water.
ⓐ tent ⓑ houseboat ⓒ apartment ⓓ kitchen

12. The supermarket is a place where we ....
ⓐ send letters ⓑ learn ⓒ buy food ⓓ work

13. The post office is a place where we ....
ⓐ buy clothes ⓑ send letters ⓒ buy food ⓓ learn

14. The school is a place where I ....
ⓐ learn ⓑ work ⓒ buy clothes ⓓ send letters

15. The office is a place where my mom and dad ....
ⓐ buy food ⓑ learn ⓒ work ⓓ send letters

16. The hospital is a place where we go when we are ....
ⓐ learning ⓑ buying food ⓒ sick ⓓ working

17. He was sick so he went to ....
ⓐ office ⓑ school ⓒ hospital ⓓ supermarket

18. The shopping mall is a place where I ....
ⓐ send letters ⓑ learn ⓒ buy clothes ⓓ sleep

19. My friend lives .... a boat in the summer.
ⓐ under ⓑ front ⓒ on ⓓ between

20. My favorite room is the ....
ⓐ van ⓑ living room ⓒ face ⓓ boot

21. In summer,we travel.................... and down the Nile.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ up ⓓ so

22. ....right. The park is on the left.
ⓐ Turn ⓑ Take ⓒ Talk ⓓ Learn

23. The hospital is ....the corner.
ⓐ of ⓑ front ⓒ on ⓓ under

24. I play football in the.................. .
ⓐ hospital ⓑ post office ⓒ park ⓓ supermarket
25. The man swam and .... the child.
ⓐ decided ⓑ saved ⓒ jumped ⓓ smiled
26. I bought a nice present for my mom from a ....in Hurghada.
ⓐ school ⓑ hospital ⓒ post office ⓓ bazaar
27. You can go on....................... in the Sahara Desert.
ⓐ running ⓑ diving ⓒ swimming ⓓ safaris
28. .... lives in Hurghada ? - Mariam.
ⓐ What ⓑ Who ⓒ Does ⓓ When
29. About 190,000 people .... in Hurghada.
ⓐ dive ⓑ swim ⓒ run ⓓ live
30. Mona works at the .... where we buy food.
ⓐ supermarket ⓑ bank ⓒ post office ⓓ hospital
31. Mona checks that the food is ....
ⓐ expensive ⓑ fresh ⓒ old ⓓ salty
32. Sahl Hasheesh is in the .... of Hurghada.
ⓐ north ⓑ west ⓒ east ⓓ south
33. Many tourists go on safaris in the Sahara ....
ⓐ Desert ⓑ Lake ⓒ Sea ⓓ River
34. I bought this souvenir هدية تذكارية from the ....
ⓐ bazar ⓑ bank ⓒ post office ⓓ hospital
35. Mona helps us. She is very ....
ⓐ smart ⓑ kind ⓒ funny ⓓ tall
36. There are lots of .... things to do in Hurghada.
ⓐ bad ⓑ tiring ⓒ interesting ⓓ ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

helpful - find - fresh - food - sells

Mona works at the supermarket near my house. I see her every week when I buy (1) .... .She checks the food is (2) .... She helps me when I can't (3)..................... something. She is very (4) .... and friendly.

live - east - city- do - wash

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a (1) .... called Hurghada. It's in the (2) .... of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people (3) .... here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to (4) ....





right - corner - where - straight – directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some (1) .... From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go (2) .... ahead. Toke the second (3) .... My house is on the (3) ....

Cairo - clothes -between-shopping mall-next

My name's Hana . I live in (1) .... There is a (2) .... in my street. I buy (3).................... and shoes from that shopping mall. It's (4) .... to my school where I learn.

street - eat - balcony - outside.

I love my house. It is big. My (1) .... live with us. I can play (2).............. with my brother and sister in our garden. My favorite room is the living room with the (3) .... I can see the whole (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zain lives in a .... next to the Nile.

a. city b. village c. town d. balcony

2. Our house is between a yellow house and a .... house.

a. red b. white c. black d. brown

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where are the trees ?

....

4. What is the main idea of the text ?

....

I'm Zeyad. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is between a green house and a yellow house.

The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it; a school, a hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick, they can go to the hospitals. People in the village buy their food from the supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there aren't a lot of cars there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d.

1. A/An .... is the place where we buy our food.

a. hospital b. school c. supermarket d. office

2. Zeyad's uncle lives in a ....

a. tent b. Nile c. village d. city

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do the cousins love their village ?

....

4. Where can people go when they get sick ?

....

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. It's lovely with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play footboll on Friday with my friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "lovely" means ....

a. bad b. ugly c. beautiful d. heavy

2. Hamza plays games with his.................. .

a. brother b. sister c. cousin d. friend

B. Answer the following questions.

3.When does Hamza play football ?

....

4.What's Hamza's favorite room?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. The hoseboat is .... (next to) the water.
2. I like sitting .... (in) the couch.
3. The shopping mall is .... (near) to the supermarket and the bank.
4. The school is .... (next) of the hospital.
5. .... (How) is the post office ? – In front of the bank.
6. The kids are playing .... (above) the park.
7. The tent is .... (next) of the car.
8. My school is ....(on) the shopping mall and the hospital.
9. The hotel is.......................... (next) the post office.
10. ....(What) is the armchair? – Next to the table.
11. The cat is .... (next) the tree. I can't see it.
12. Where is your book ? – It is .... (in) the table.
13. .... (Going) straight ahead then turn right.
14. My house is .... (in) the corner of the street.
15. The table is .... (in) the chair and the sofa.
16. .... (Turns) right and go straight on.

6. Punctuate the following

1. what's your favorite room

....

2. my uncle lives in a village next to the nile.

....

3. What places are there In your village?

4. I am so happy you are coming to my house today

5. do you live in an apartment or a house, ahmed ?

6. where can people go when they get sick

PARAGRAPHS

My favorite room

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I love the balcony. I can see the whole street. I watch TV in the living room. I talk to my family in the living room.

غرفتي المفضلة هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة. أحب الشرفة. أستطيع أن أرى الشارع كله. أشاهد التلفاز في غرفة المعيشة. أتحدث مع عائلتي في غرفة المعيشة.

My House

I live in a house. I live with my family. It's very big. We have three bedrooms. There are two bathrooms. There is a big kitchen. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We have a nice garden.

أعيش في بيت. أعيش مع عائلتي. إنه كبير جدًا. لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم. هناك حمامان. هناك مطبخ كبير. أمي تطبخ الطعام في المطبخ. لدينا حديقة جميلة.

Hurghada

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt. It is on the Red Sea. It's a big city. It has a beautiful beach. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert. It has beautiful houses and bazaars.

أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع في شرق مصر. إنها على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة. لديها شاطئ جميل. يذهب السياح في رحلات السفاري في الصحراء الكبرى. لديها بيوت جميلة وبازارات.

Places in My City

I live in a city. There are many nice places in my city. There is a supermarket where I can buy food. My school is near my house. My city has a post office. It also has a hospital where I go when I am sick.

أعيش في مدينة. هناك العديد من الأماكن الجميلة في مدينتي. هناك سوبر ماركت حيث أستطيع شراء الطعام. مدرستي قريبة من منزلي. مدينتي لديها مكتب بريد. كما يوجد بها مستشفى أذهب إليه عندما أكون مريضًا.




Unit 5 Where do You work ? أين تعمل ؟

Key vocabulary :

electrician	mechanic	plumber	bus driver	mail carrier
كهربائي	ميكانيكي	سباك	سائق اتوبيس	ساعي البريد
pipe	parcel	faucet	garbage collector	
ماسورة	طرد	حنفية	جامع القمامة	
messy	trash	wet	driving	lightning
فوضوي	قمامة	رطب / مبلل	القيادة	البرق
plug	storm	storm	electric shock	dry
فيشة	عاصفة	عاصفة	صدمة كهرباء	جاف
shop repair	safely	burn	screwdriver	measure tape
ورشة تصليح	بأمان	يحرق	مفك	شريط قياس
architect	blocks	experiment	adult	curious
مهندس معماري	مكعبات	تجربة	بالغ	شخص فضولي
patient	safety	cell phone	pros	cons
صبور	أمان	هاتف محمول	مميزات	عيوب
weather	outside	heavy	mail bag	easy
الطقس	خارج	ثقيل	شنطة البريد	سهل

Grammar

Demonstrative pronouns — أسماء الاشارة

Near قريب	far بعيد
This — هذا / هذه للاشارة للمفرد القريب This is a book.	That — ذلك / تلك للاشارة للمفرد البعيد That is a book.

Near قريب	far بعيد
These — هؤلاء للاشارة للجمع القريب These are books.	Those — أولئك للاشارة للجمع البعيد Those are books.

The Past Simple tense — الماضي البسيط

الاستخدام : نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم و انتهي في الماضي في فترة زمنية محددة .

الأفعال المنتظمة

I used my phone yesterday. She cooked dinner last night.

فاعل + didn't + مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة ..... .

I didn't use my phone yesterday. She did not cook dinner last night.

Did + فاعل + مصدر الفعل (المنتظم و الغير منتظم) + تكملة السؤال ..... ?

Question : Did you use my phone yesterday?
Answer : Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

Q. word + did + فاعل + مصدر الفعل (المنتظم و الغير منتظم) + تكملة السؤال ..... ?

Question : When did you use your phone? I used my phone yesterday.

Verb to be:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was / wasn't
We / You / They/ اسم جمع	were / weren't

I was short. I wasn't tall. We were at school. We weren't at home

Key words : الكلمات الدالة عليه

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ	in = (سنه ماضية)	في
last	الماضي	once	ذات مرة		

Important Sentences

A builder made the walls strong and safe.
بنى البنّاء الجدران قوية وآمنة.

An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer.
قام الكهربائي بتوصيل الكهرباء بحيث يمكنك استخدام الأضواء، مشاهدة التلفزيون، أو القيام بواجبك على الكمبيوتر.

A plumber connected the pipes and faucets so you have water to take a shower and brush your teeth.
قام السباك بتوصيل الأنابيب والصنابير حتى يكون لديك ماء للاستحمام وتنظيف أسنانك.

A garbage collector takes away all the garbage so you can keep your house nice and clean.
يأخذ عامل جمع القمامة كل القمامة بحيث يمكنك الحفاظ على منزلك نظيفًا ومرتبًا.

A mail carrier delivers your letters and packages.
يقوم ساعي البريد بتسليم رسائلك وطرودك.

A mechanic fixes the car.
يقوم الميكانيكي بإصلاح السيارة.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.
هي تعرف كيف تعمل بأمان مع الكهرباء.

In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning.
في العاصفة، نرى أحيانًا وميضًا من البرق.

If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies.
إذا حصلنا على صدمة كهربائية، لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.
لا تلمس أي شيء كهربائي بيدين مبللتين.

Never put anything into a socket; only use plugs.
لا تضع أي شيء في المقبس؛ استخدم المقابس فقط.

She loved to experiment.
كانت تحب التجارب.

She was very curious.
كانت فضولية جدًا.

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks.
عندما كانت تاليا طفلة، كانت تلعب بالكتل.

Talia made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll.
صنعت تاليا بيتًا صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا لدمية أختها.

Amir played, helped, and explained things all the time.
كان أمير يلعب، يساعد، ويشرح الأشياء طوال الوقت.

Mail carriers walk all day.
يمشي سعاة البريد طوال اليوم.

Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
يحصل سعاة البريد على الكثير من التمارين.

Mail carriers are outside, and it's great when the weather is good.
يكون سعاة البريد في الخارج، وهذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس جيدًا.

Mail carriers are outside all day, and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or very cold.
يكون سعاة البريد في الخارج طوال اليوم، وهذا ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الطقس حارًا جدًا أو باردًا جدًا.

The mail bag is very heavy.
حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا.

Mail carriers wake up very early.
يستيقظ سعاة البريد مبكرًا جدًا.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 5

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. Amira is a/an...................... .
a. driver b. electrician c. teacher d. vet
2. She studied and practiced for .... years.
a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. She said that electricity is very ....
a. safe b. dangerous c. nice d. good
4. She knows how to work .... with electricity.
a. safely b. carelessly c. badly d. sadly

(B)

1. All the people and jobs are very .... for us.
a. terrible b. sad c. important d. bad
2. The cleaners keep our city.................... .
a. clean b. dirty c. ugly d. terrible
3. The .... connect the pipes to help us get water.
a. electricians b. plumber c. teacher d. driver
4. The .... connect electricity so we can use th lights.
a. electricians b. plumber c. teacher d. driver

(C)

1. Amir was always very .... and he was never angry
a. patient b. curious c. happy d. sad
2. He liked .... people.
a. watching b. helping c. eating d. washing
3. He .... things all the time.
a. explained b. ignored c. played d. loved
4. Amir is a/an .... now and all people him.
a. officer b. adult c. artist d. teacher

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. I want to be a .... to fix cars.
ⓐ doctor ⓑ plumber ⓒ mechanic ⓓ mail carrier
2. When dad was young,he wanted to be a / an ....to connect electricity.
ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ bus driver ⓒ mail carrier ⓓ electrician
3. If you have a problem with pipes in your house,you need a/an ....
ⓐ electrician ⓑ mail carrier ⓒ bus driver ⓓ plumber
4. A mail carrier delivers ....
ⓐ parcels ⓑ cars ⓒ trash ⓓ faucets
5. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of.....................
ⓐ electricity ⓑ lightning ⓒ shock ⓓ cars

6. I should study hard and .... before becoming an electrician.
ⓐ sleep ⓑ play ⓒ practice ⓓ don't care

7. Electricity is very useful, but it is also very..................
ⓐ safe ⓑ nice ⓒ boring ⓓ dangerous

8. Never touch anything electrical with ....
ⓐ dry hands ⓑ gloves ⓒ wet hands ⓓ screwdriver

9. Electricity is very dangerous, and it can ....
ⓐ make noise ⓑ be fun ⓒ make us happy ⓓ burn us

10. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of ....
ⓐ sound ⓑ light ⓒ water ⓓ wind

11. Never put anything into a socket; only use ....
ⓐ broken wires ⓑ wet tools ⓒ plugs ⓓ fingers

12. She loved to experiment. She was very.................. .
ⓐ sad ⓑ angry ⓒ curious ⓓ lazy

13. She carried a..................to open old radios.
ⓐ socket ⓑ screwdriver ⓒ tape measure ⓓ pencil

14. Talia played with.............. . She put one block on top of another.
ⓐ balls ⓑ blocks ⓒ spoons ⓓ knives

15. She always carried a......... , and she opened old radios and cell phones.
ⓐ screwdriver ⓑ tape measure ⓒ hammer ⓓ phone

16. He didn't get angry with his little brothers. He is very ....
ⓐ patient ⓑ sad ⓒ bad ⓓ mad

17. The electricians connect .... so that we can use lights.
ⓐ bus ⓑ bag ⓒ garbage ⓓ electricity

18. The garbage collectors take away our ....
ⓐ garbage ⓑ water ⓒ pipes ⓓ food

19. Mailcarriers wake up ....very early.
ⓐ early ⓑ late ⓒ at night ⓓ in the evening

20. .... connect the pipes so that we have water.
ⓐ Electricians ⓑ Mechanics ⓒ Cleaners ⓓ Plumbers

21. .... connect electricity so that we can use lights.
ⓐ Plumbers ⓑ Cleaners ⓒ Electricians ⓓ Bus drivers

22. .... keep the school clean.
ⓐ Plumbers ⓑ Cleaners ⓒ Bus drivers ⓓ Garbage collectors

23. .... bring the children to school.
ⓐ Bus drivers ⓑ Electricians ⓒ Cleaners ⓓ Plumbers

24. .... take away our garbage.
ⓐ Bus drivers ⓑ Cleaners ⓒ Plumbers ⓓ Garbage collectors

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bus driver - garbog - lights - pipes - electricion

We have a big house. A (1) .... collector takes away all garbage. An (2) .... connects electricity so we can use lights. A plumber connects the (3) .... so we can have water. Every day the (4) .... takes us to school. We like our house very much.

house - doll - job - put - older

When Dina was a baby,she played with blocks. She (1) .... one block on top of another. When she was (2) .... , she started making things. She made a little (3) .... for her dog. Also she made a bed for her sister's (4) ....

speed - dry - electricity- wet - electrician

I'm Maryam. I'm an electrician . I studied and practiced for three years before I became an (1) .... I know how to work safely with (2) .... Electricity travels very fast, close to the (3) ....of light. Electricity is very dangerous. Make sure your hands are (4) .... before you touch anything electrical.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people around us work hard to help us.Together,we help each other. For example, a plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you have water. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean.A bus driver drives to many different places and helps lots of people.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A .... helps us to have water.

a. plumber b. cleaner c. collector d. vet

2. A plumber connects the................ and faucets.

a. cars b. pipes c. lights d. letters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the garbage collector do ?

....

4. What does the bus driver do ?

....

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mailcarriers are outside all day.This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold.They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy.They are very tired when they come back home.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Mail carriers can get a lot of .... because they walk all the day.

a. electricity b. cars c. exercise d. bags

2.The heavy bag is one of the .... of being a moilcarrier.

a. pros b. cons c. hand d. games

B.Answer the following questions.

3. Where are the mail carriers all day?

....

4. Why are mail carriers very tired when they come back home ?

....

Noha and Amir are my cousins.They are different. Noha is an electrician. When Noha was a child, she loved to experiment. Noha was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. She learned about safety with electricity.My cousin Amir is ateacher. He is always patient. When Amir was young, he liked helping people. Amir never gets angry with his students. He always explains things for his students.

A. Choose the correct answer from a ,b , c or d.

1. Noha learned about...................... with electricity.

a. blocks b. safety c. animals d. shock

2. The underlined word "young" means...................... .

a. angry b.calm c. lazy d. little

B.Answer thefollowing questions.

3. What did Noha carry ?

....

4. What did Amir like when he was young ?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. .... (These) map will help us.
2. My father bought .... (that) toys for me.
3. .... (That) shoes are very big.
4. .... (These) car is very e><pensive.
5. Can you paint .... (this) room?
6. .... (That) mountains are very high.
7. .... (This) pens are blue.
8. .... (These) flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
9. .... (That) are my friends.
10. Maryam .... (love) to do experiments when she was young.
11. We .... (study) English yesterday.
12. They .... (wash) the car yesterday.
13. Maryam didn't .... (loved) to do experiments.
14. We .... (don't) study English yesterday.
15. They didn't .... (washing) the car.
16. .... (Do) Maryam study English yesterday?
17. What .... (does) Maryam love to do ?
18. When did Hana .... (went) to school?



19. I found .... (these) cat in the park.
20. Did you .... (made) a house for your sister's doll?
21. He .... (go) to Paris last weekend.
22. She always .... (carry) a pencil when she was little.
23. When my brother .... (be) a child, he played with toys.
24. What .... (do) you like to play with when you were little?
25. Sara .... (were) happy yesterday.

6. Punctuate the following.

1. what's Maryam's job

....

2. it is not easy to become an electrician

....

3. what does the garbage collector do

....

4. many people around us work hard to help us

....

PARAGRAPHS

How workers help us every day

All jobs are good. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The bus drivers bring children to school. The mail carriers are delivering letters. We need garbage collectors to take away our trash. The electricians connect electricity.

كيف يساعدنا العمال كل يوم

جميع الوظائف جيدة. يقوم السباكون بتوصيل الأنابيب حتى يكون لدينا ماء. يجلب سائقو الحافلات الأطفال إلى المدرسة. يقوم سعاة البريد بتوصيل الرسائل. نحن بحاجة إلى عمال النظافة لجمع القمامة. يقوم الكهربائيون بتوصيل الكهرباء.

Mail carriers

Mail carriers deliver letters. They are outside all day. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. It is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. They wake up very early.

سعاة البريد

يقوم سعاة البريد بتوصيل الرسائل. يكونون خارج المنزل طوال اليوم. يمشي سعاة البريد طوال اليوم ويحصلون على الكثير من التمارين. ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا. يستيقظون في وقت مبكر جدًا.

Your favorite job

My favorite job is an electrician. When I was a child, I loved to experiment. I always carry a screwdriver. I open old radios and cell phones. I learn about safety with electricity.

وظيفتي المفضلة هي كهربائي. عندما كنت طفلاً، كنت أحب التجارب. أحمل دائمًا مفك براغي. أفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة والهواتف المحمولة. أتعلم عن السلامة مع الكهرباء.

Electricity

Electricity is very useful, but it is also dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can burn us. We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands. Electricity travels very fast.

الكهرباء مفيدة جدًا، لكنها أيضًا خطيرة. إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربائية، لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا. يمكن أن تحرقنا. يجب ألا نلمس أي شيء كهربائي بأيدٍ مبللة. تسافر الكهرباء بسرعة كبيرة.

Unit 6



What do you do? ماذا تفعل ؟

Key vocabulary :

fisherman	fishing	farmer	farming	restaurant
صياد سمك	الصيد	فلاح	الزراعة	مطعم
guide	librarian	education	tourism industry	hotel
مرشد سياحي	مكتبي / أمين المكتبة	التعليم	صناعة السياحة	فندق
energy	money	renewable	non-renewable	wood
طاقة	نقود	متجدد	غير متجدد	خشب
fresh	disappointed	fish van	engine	lovely
طازج	محبط	شاحنة بيع الاسماك	محرك	جميل / محبوب
trash	surprising	patient	shelf	exciting
قمامة	مفاجئ / مندهش	صبور	رف	مثير / رائع

Grammar



The prefix " dis "

هي عبارة عن مجموعة حروف تضاف لأول الكلمة (بادئة) لتعطي معني (ليس)

disagree	not agree	يرفض	dislike	not like	لا يحب
disobey	not obey	يعصى	disappear	not appear	يختفى

He dislike football. = He doesn't like football.

obey	يطيع	disobey	يرفض الطاعة /يعصى
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض
like	يحب	dislike	لا يحب /يكره
connect	يتصل	disconnect	dr'u hghjwhg

Don't + inf مصدر الفعل ....

Don't worry. لا تقلق

Don't cut down trees. لا تقطع الأشجار





GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 6

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(A)

1. My uncle is good at looking after the.................. .

a. plants b. chickens c. people d. animals

2. My uncle grows...................... .

a. onions b. carrots c. fruits d. tomatoes

3. Then in.................... , he sends the fruit to the factory.

a. July b. June c. October d. May

4. He sells some of them at the..................... .

a. market b. street c. school d. hospital

(B)

1. There's an old .... in my village.

a. fisherman b. elecrtician c. doctor d. plumber

2. He sells......................... .

a. books b. cars c. vegetables d. fish

3. He .... his job..

a. hates b. doesn't like c. dislike d. likes

4. He always drives his old .... around the city.

a. bus b. bike c. van d. train

(C)

1. Being a teacher is not......................... .

a. easy b. sad c. hard d. fun

2. For a teacher, every day is ....

a. the same b. alike c. different d. nice

3. .... always ask surprising questions.

a. Students b. People c. Managers d. Teachers

4. They need to be very......................... .

a. patient b. angry c. hungry d. bad

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An .... works on the sea.

ⓐ librarian ⓑ guide ⓒ engineer ⓓ fisherman

2. A .... helps us find the information in the library.

ⓐ farmer ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ librarian

3. A farmer looks .... the trees all year.

ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ after ⓓ to

4. My uncle wasn't at home. He went ....on his boat.

ⓐ out ⓑ in ⓒ for ⓓ to

5. The person who looks after all the books is called a ....

ⓐ librarian ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ farmer

6. The person who catches fish is called a ....
ⓐ guide ⓑ fisherman ⓒ librarian ⓓ farmer

7. The person who tells the tourists lots of interesting information is called a.... .
ⓐ librarian ⓑ guide ⓒ fisherman ⓓ farmer

8. The person who grows plants is called a ....
ⓐ guide ⓑ fisherman ⓒ librarian ⓓ farmer

9. The fisherman goes out on his boat to catch fresh ....
ⓐ fish ⓑ dogs ⓒ cats ⓓ goats

10. I'm a .... I work in a school library.
ⓐ librarian ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ farmer

11. A .... works in the tourism industry.
ⓐ guide ⓑ fisherman ⓒ librarian ⓓ farmer

12. I'm a .... and I grow and look after plants and trees.
ⓐ librarian ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ farmer

13. A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.
ⓐ fisherman ⓑ guide ⓒ librarian ⓓ farmer

14. He is .... down trees to sell the wood.
ⓐ looking ⓑ cutting ⓒ washing ⓓ running

15. Malak looked out of the ....
ⓐ table ⓑ chair ⓒ sofa ⓓ window

16. .... worry, you will arrive early.
ⓐ Didn't ⓑ Doesn't ⓒ Don't ⓓ Doing

17. Plant the seed and it will be a ....
ⓐ tree ⓑ window ⓒ door ⓓ table

18. The mechanic can.........................the engine.
ⓐ break ⓑ fix ⓒ get ⓓ come

19. My dad was a .... and he taught me how to fix cars
ⓐ mechanic ⓑ teacher ⓒ doctor ⓓ engineer

20. My grandpa taught me all........................ cars.
ⓐ of ⓑ around ⓒ about ⓓ off

21. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and..................... .
ⓐ happy ⓑ good ⓒ disappointed ⓓ pleased

22. It was .... in the sun.
ⓐ snowy ⓑ cold ⓒ icy ⓓ hot

23. We start the .... to drive the car.
ⓐ engine ⓑ mp3 player ⓒ phone ⓓ tablet

24. The old fisherman has .... fish. It is awesome
ⓐ ugly ⓑ old ⓒ bad ⓓ fresh

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wind - can - renewable - Gas - Solar energy

There are many forms of energy. Some forms are(1) .... Renewable energy (2) .... grow again or never run out. Also there is non-renewable energy. It can't grow again. The (3)..................... is a kind of renewable energy. (4) .... and oil are non-renewable.

supermarket - send - play - pick- oranges

I'm a farmer. I grow (1) .... I (2) .... the fruit. I (3)................... a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the (4) ....

patient - different - change - food - job

I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best (1) ....in the world. For a teacher, every day is (2) .... Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can (3) .... their students' lives. Teachers need to be very (4) ....

interesting - electricity - books - information - library

I'm Maryam. like books very much. I'm a librarian. I work in a school (1) .... It's my job to look ofter all the (2) .... I buy lots of new books. I help children find the (3) ....they need. It is an (4) .... job for me. I like it.

disappointed - engine - fish - van - problem

The old fisherman drives around the village in on old van. One day, he couldn't start his (1) .... He was sad and (2) .... A mechanic looked at the old van's (3) .... It was a simple (4).................. . He fixed his van.

seed - wood - sad - happy - cut down

Samia needed money. She (1) .... her mango tree. She sold the (2) .... She was (3) .... .Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood. Her sister gave her a (4) ....to plant a new tree.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions.Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day.A teacher can change their students' lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The teacher's job is not ....

a. surprising b. quiet c. easy d. difficult

2. Teachers need to think............................. .

a. quickly b. slowly c. safely d. easily

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change ?

....

4. What do students always ask ?

....

I'm Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He has a boat. Every morning, he goes to the Nile to catch fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the market. He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. The text tells us about. ....

a. a fisherman b.a boat c. fish d. a market

2. The underlined word "se.;l.;.s; "·1s the oppos'1te of ....

a. buys b. sends c. catches d. goes

B. Read and answer the following questions :

3. Where does Hussein's uncle go in the morning ?

....

4. Why does Hussein's unclelike his job ?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. Ahmed likes football, but he .... (likes) tennis.
2. During the day, The moon .... (appears) in the sky.
3. A good girl should .... (disobey) her parents.
4. Ali Thinks that English is hard, but I .... (agree) with him.
5. He doesn't like chicken. This means he .... (likes) chicken.
6. The mechanic can........................ (fixes) the engine.
7. She .... (likes) ice cream. She doesn't eat it.
8. .... (Comes) and get your lovely fish.

6. Punctuate the following

1. what do you do, ahmed ?

....

2. i want to be a teacher

....

3. is being a teacher an important job

....

4. there's an old fisherman in my village

....

PARAGRAPHS

A farmer / Mango trees

My dad is a farmer. He grows oranges. He looks after the trees. He gives them water and nutrients. He picks the fruit. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

والدي مزارع. يزرع البرتقال. يعتني بالأشجار. يعطيها الماء والمغذيات. يقطف الثمار. يرسل الكثير من الثمار إلى المصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال.

A fisherman's job

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village. He likes his job. He has fun. He sells fresh fish. My mom always buys fish from him.

هناك صياد كبير السن في قريتي. يقود سيارته حول القرية. يحب وظيفته. يستمتع بها. يبيع السمك الطازج. أمي تشتري السمك منه دائماً.

The guide

I want to be a guide. The guide works in the tourism industry. People come to our country. The guide explains the history. He tells lots of interesting information. The guide works outside. This is an interesting job.

أريد أن أكون مرشدًا. يعمل المرشد في صناعة السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدنا. يشرح المرشد التاريخ. يقدم الكثير من المعلومات الشيقة. يعمل المرشد في الخارج. هذه وظيفة ممتعة.

A librarian

My mother is a librarian. She works in a school library and looks after all the books. She buys lots of new books. She helps children find the information. She likes her job.

أمي أمينة مكتبة. تعمل في مكتبة المدرسة وتعتني بجميع الكتب. تشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة. تساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات. تحب وظيفتها.

A teacher

A teacher's job is not easy. For a teacher every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers can change their students' lives. Teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day.

وظيفة المعلم ليست سهلة. كل يوم يختلف عن الآخر بالنسبة للمعلم. الطلاب دائماً يطرحون أسئلة مفاجئة. يمكن للمعلمين تغيير حياة طلابهم. يحتاج المعلمون إلى أن يكونوا صبورين جداً. يعملون لساعات طويلة كل يوم.

SAMPLE TEST 1

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Samy was always very .... and he was never angry.
a. happy b. curious c. patient d. sad
2. He liked to .... all the people around him.
a. watch b. help c. eat d. wash
3. He .... things all the time.
a. explained b. ignored c. played d. loved
4. Samy is a/an .... now and all people him.
a. officer b. adult c. artist d. teacher

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. The fennec fox lives in the ....
a. deserts b. rivers c. lakes d. seas
2. They used rainwater to ....the seeds.
a. water b. sell c. bring d. make
3. We sleep in the .... at home.
a. bedroom b. living room c. bathroom d. garden
4. Electricity travels very .... , close to the speed of light.
a. slowly b. sadly c. fast d. well

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fixed - drives - fish - van - disappointed

My uncle is an old fisherman. He (1) .... around the village in on old van. One day, he couldn't start his (2) .... He was sad and (3) .... A mechanic looked at the old van's engine. It was a simple problem. He (4) .... his van.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians were amazing people. Most of them worked as formers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing near the river.They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River.The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow.It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians made .... from papyrus.
a. sweets b. sandals c. doors d. windows
2. This text is about "......................".
a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
....
4. What does papyrus need to grow ? ....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Maryam .... (likes) ice cream. She doesn't eat it.
2. We .... (painted) our house this means we painted it again.
3. The turtle is the .... (slow) animal.
4. The cat is .... (next) the tree. I can't see it.

6. Punctuate the following

1. the bear is stronger than the pelican

....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Your house

Guiding elements: – bedroom – kitchen

....

....

SAMPLE TEST 2

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egyptian Farmers produce .... things.

a. bad b. good c. a few d. many

2. They plant...................... and fruits.

a. trees b. flowers c. vegetables d. grass

3. They plant tomatoes .... and potatoes.

a. lettuce b. onions c. carrots d. trees

4. They also raise...................... .

a. chickens b. cows c. dogs d. donkeys

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Farmers like spiders. They are very ....

a. helpful b. bad c. small d. ugly

2. Acacia grows in the .... habitat.

a. desert b. agricultural c. lake d. river

3. He was sick so he went to ....

a. supermarket b . school c. hospital d. office

4. Mail carriers are outside and it's...............when the weather is good.

a. great b. bad c. not good d. ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bus driver - garbage - lights - pipes - electricion

We live in a big house. A lot of people help us. A (1) .... collector takes away all garbage. An (2) .... connects electricity, so we can use lights. A plumber connects the (3) .... so we can have water. Every day the (4) .... takes us to school.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it worm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fennec fox loses .... from its ears.

a. cold b. heat c. fur d. weight

2. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at ....

a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. How heavy is the fennec fox ?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My homework has a lot of mistakes. I need to .... (do) it.
2. The rose is the .... (more) beautiful flower.
3. .... (How) is the post office ? – In front of the bank.
4. .... (These) car is very e><pensive.

6. Punctuate the following

1. there's an old fisherman in my village

....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Your favourite job

Guiding elements:
- What do you do in this job?
- Where do you work?

....

....

SAMPLE TEST 3

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hamza lives in ....

a. Hurghada b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Giza

2. There are some beautiful houses and .... in Hurghada.

a. shops b. schools c. bazaars d. parks

3. There are .... in Hurghada.

a. pyramids b. beaches c. offices d. parks

4. Tourists go on .... in the Sahara Desert.

a. safaris b. holidays c. a trip d. journeys

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Egyptian farmers ....chickens.

a. give b. play c. raise d. build

2. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of................. .

a. sand b. water c. food d. electricity

3. Horses like to drink........................water.

a. sweet b. dirty c. fresh d. salt

4. I do a lot of sport at school. I am ....

a. healthy b. unhealthy c. bad d. weak

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

garden - palace - honest - lie - flowers

Once upon a time, there was a rich emperor. He and his family lived in a (1)........................... . He was (2) .... and all people loved him. He had a very beautiful (3) .... and it was full of many (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live inthe desert don't need a lot of water.There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamorisk there.

A. Choose thecorrect answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can find acacia plant and .... in the desert.

a. reed b. tomarisk c. orange tree d. lotus flower

2. The text is about "........................".

a. Habitats b. Clothes c. Festivals d. Houses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What is the............................. (big) animal in the world?
2. Maryam didn't .... (loved) to do experiments.
3. My school is .... (on) the shopping mall and the hospital.
4. The sunflower lives the .... (long).

6. Punctuate the following

1. why do plants need sunlight and water

....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Tomato plant





Guiding elements: - seeds - green

....

....

SAMPLE TEST 4

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... are beautiful, strong animals.

a. Camels b. Horses c. Foxes d. Donkeys

2. Camels can carry people to cross the...................... .

a. river b. desert c. sea d. lake

3. Camels' milk is ....

a. delicious b. ugly c. bad d. terrible

4. We use camels' .... to make clothes.

a. legs b. fur c. eyes d. tails

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Horses eat........................and drink fresh water.

a. meat b. grass c. sand d. fish

2. Tomatoes are green .... they are red.

a. after b. before c. when d. at

3. The .... is a place where we send letters.

a. post office b. office c. school d. hospital

4. Pros are .... things.

a. good b. bad c. not good d. ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

delicious - Farmers - Doctors - grow - fruits

We produce many foods in Egypt. We (1) .... rice, onions, and tomatoes. (2) .... grow many things we eat every day. Egypt produces (3) ....like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Food is (4) ....

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mailcarriers are outside all day.This is **great** when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold.They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy.They are very tired when they come back home.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The word "**great**" means ....

a. good b. bad c. uglu d. terrible

2.The heavy bag is one of the .... of being a moilcarrier.

a. pros b. cons c. hand d. games

B.Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. Where are the mail carriers all day? ....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Sara .... (were) happy yesterday.
2. I have the.............................. (heavy) suitcase.
3. The airplane is .... (that) the bicycle.
4. He speaks English, ... (and) he can't speak Chinese.

6. Punctuate the following

1. Ahmed and maryam love animals

....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Different habitats

Guiding elements: - desert - agricultural

....

....

....

SAMPLE TEST 5

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To be a teacher isn't ....

a. easy b. sad c. hard d. fun

2. .... always ask surprising questions.

a. Students b. People c. Managers d. Teachers

3. Teachers can .... their students' lives.

a. damage b. eat c. spiol d. waste

4. Teachers need to be very......................... .

a. patient b. angry c. hungry d. bad

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it.................... .

a. warm b. cold c. sad d. tall

2. A/An .... works on the sea.

a. librarian b. guide c. engineer d. fisherman

3. My friend lives on water. He lives on a........................ .

a. rock b. tent c. houseboat d. school

4. Tomatoes have........................inside.

a. roots b. seeds c. shoots d. leaves

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

reaches - hungry - describe - paw - beak

There are a pelican and a bear in the middle of the river. They are very (1).................. . They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.The bear (2) .... for the fish. It lifts its (3) .... The pelican opens its (4) .... It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! My name is Youssef. I want to tell you about myself. I live in a house. My favorite room is the living room. It's lovely with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother outside. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play footboll on Friday with my friends in our garden.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Youssef plays games with his................... .

a. brother b. sister c. cousin d. friend

2. The underlined word "lovely" means ....

a. bad b. ugly c. beautiful d. heavy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Youssef play football ?

....

4. What's Youssef 's favorite room?

....

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We .... (study) English yesterday.
2. The lion is the........................... (dangerous) animal.
3. The school is .... (next) of the hospital.
4. I want to go swimming, ... (and) it is raining.

6. Punctuate the following

1. The palace is where an emperor lives.

....

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Camels

Guiding elements: - flat feet - desert

....

....



LISTENING SCRIPT

Unit 1

A) Farmers are very important for us. Farmers produce food for us to eat. They grow tomatoes and onions.They raise chickens to get eggs.

B) Plants are living things. Some plants are big and some are small. Plants need water to grow. We need to take care of plants.

c) Egyptian Farmers produce many things. They plant vegetables and fruits. They plant tomatoes, onions and potatoes. They also raise chickens.

Unit 2

A) The fennec fox lives in the desert. The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects. It loses heat from its ears.

B) The bear and the pelican are in the river. They are looking at a big juicy fish. The pelican says sadly, "I'm sorry". The bear is bear and bigger than the pelican.

C) Some animals live in our country. The crocodile is huge and scary. Spiders are very helpful.
Farmers like spiders.

Unit 3

A) Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed in the soil and the plant grows. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

B) Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. He lived with his grandparents. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons.They are very happy and they have a good life.

C) Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile river.

Unit 4

A) Hafsa lives in Hurghada. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars in Hurghada. There are beaches in Hurghada. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

B) Ali lives on a houseboat in Hurghada. His parents work on a tourist boot. Ali goes with his parents to work in the summer. Ali's parents travel up and down the Nile .

C) Reem lives in a small village. Her school is next to the park. Reem often plays football in the park. Reem plays in the park with her friend.

Unit 5

A) Amira is an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years. She said that electricity is very dangerous. She knows how to work safely with electricity.

B) All the people and jobs are very important for us. The cleaners keep our city clean. The plumber connect the pipes to help us get water. The electrician connect electricity so we can use th lights.

C) Amir was always very patient and he was never angry. He liked helping people. He explained things all the time. Amir is an adult now and all people him.

Unit 6

A) My uncle is good at looking after the plants. My uncle grows fruits. Then in October, he sends the fruit to the factory. He sells some of them at the market .

B) There's an old fisherman in my village. He sells fish. He likes his job. He always drives his old van around the city.

C) Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to be very patient.

Sample Test 1 Samy was always very patient and he was never angry. He liked to help all the people around him. He explained things all the time. Samy is an adult now and all people him.

Sample Test 2 Egyptian Farmers produce many things. They plant vegetables and fruits. They plant tomatoes, onions and potatoes. They also raise chickens .

Sample Test 3 Hamza lives in Hurghada. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars in Hurghada. There are beaches in Hurghada. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

Sample Test 4 Camels are beautiful, strong animals. Camels can carry people to cross thedesert. Camels' milk is delicious. We use camels' fur to make clothes.

Sample Test 5 To be a teacher isn't easy . Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers can change their students' lives.Teachers need to be verypatient.

حمل الآن

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (4)

الترم الاول





(1) Unit one "I feel good"

(1) Lesson one "food and drinks"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The food looks .... I like it.
ⓐ bad ⓑ cold ⓒ delicious ⓓ dirty

2. Let's .... our lunch.
ⓐ eats ⓑ eat ⓒ eating ⓓ ate

3. Egyptians farmers .... rice in Egypt.
ⓐ raise ⓑ grow ⓒ think ⓓ play

4. Farmers grow many fruits like ....
ⓐ mangoes ⓑ beans ⓒ carrots ⓓ rice

5. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and .... in Egypt.
ⓐ grapes ⓑ onions ⓒ watermelon ⓓ mangoes

6. Egyptian farmers .... many things you can see on this table.
ⓐ think ⓑ raise ⓒ produce ⓓ look

7. Farmers .... chickens in Egypt.
ⓐ grow ⓑ raise ⓒ make ⓓ plant

8. We .... rice in Egypt.
ⓐ raise ⓑ grow ⓒ think ⓓ look

9. Apples and .... are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ mangoes ⓑ rice ⓒ onions ⓓ potatoes

10. I eat chicken and rice for ....
ⓐ dinner ⓑ breakfast ⓒ lunch ⓓ snack

11. Egyptian .... produce many foods for us.
ⓐ farmers ⓑ doctors ⓒ teachers ⓓ nurses

12. Habiba always drinks .... in the morning. It's healthy.
ⓐ onions ⓑ potatoes ⓒ animals ⓓ milk

13. I like .... very much. We make sugar out of it. (المنوفية - 2022)
ⓐ onions ⓑ watermelon ⓒ sugarcane ⓓ chickens

14. I eat .... in the morning. (اسكندرية - 2024)
ⓐ breakfast ⓑ lunch ⓒ dinner ⓓ juice

15. Mangoes and .... are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ onions ⓑ bananas ⓒ rice ⓓ potatoes

16. We grow .... in Egypt. (المنوفية - 2022)
ⓐ bike ⓑ rice ⓒ car ⓓ bus

17. Farmers grow rice and .... They help us eat good food. (الغربية - 2022)
ⓐ potatoes ⓑ chairs ⓒ chickens ⓓ animals

18. Mom cooks special food for us. Yum! It looks ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ delicious ⓓ cold

19. We made chips from ....
ⓐ bananas ⓑ mangoes ⓒ potatoes ⓓ tomatoes

20. I drink a glass of ………… for breakfast.
ⓐ onions ⓑ bananas ⓒ milk ⓓ rice

21. We …………… chickens to get fresh eggs.
ⓐ raise ⓑ read ⓒ look ⓓ grow

22. Watermelon and ………….. are my favorite fruits.
ⓐ onions ⓑ grapes ⓒ potatoes ⓓ rice

23. ………….. grow vegetables for us to eat.
ⓐ Engineers ⓑ Farmers ⓒ Doctors ⓓ Vets

24. Breakfast is my favourite ………….. .
ⓐ job ⓑ meal ⓒ clothes ⓓ place

25. Orange juice is my favourite ……………… .
ⓐ book ⓑ sport ⓒ food ⓓ drink

26. .... and mangoes are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ Watermelon ⓑ Rice ⓒ Milk ⓓ Onions

27. He is a farmer. He ………… rice on his farm.
ⓐ raises ⓑ grows ⓒ comes ⓓ drinks

28. Farmers …………… many vegetables every year.
ⓐ happen ⓑ practice ⓒ talk ⓓ produce

29. Domiati cheese is very ……………. .
ⓐ tall ⓑ wrong ⓒ famous ⓓ sad

30. Our houses is so old. We need to ……………. it. (اسكندرية - 2024)
ⓐ repaint ⓑ recook ⓒ reread ⓓ rewrite

31. ………….. are kinds of vegetables.
ⓐ Oranges ⓑ Tomatoes ⓒ Apples ⓓ Grapes

32. Lunch is ……………. mom made some special food for us.
ⓐ ready ⓑ dirty ⓒ hungry ⓓ happy

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

raise – grow – produce – shoot – country (الدقهلية - 2024)

lots of the food we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers **(1)** .... rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers **(2)** .... chickens, sheep, cows, goats, and many other animals. Farmers **(3)** .... many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great **(4)** ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the time we sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Kareem's family live?

....

2. Why does Kareem like lunch?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We have ………… meals every day.
ⓐ two ⓑ one ⓒ four ⓓ three

4. We are having potatoes and chicken for ………….. today.
ⓐ breakfast ⓑ lunch ⓒ dinner ⓓ break

➲ Punctate the following:

1. egyptian farmers produce many things

....

2. i made special food for us

....

3. we grow rice in egypt.

....

(2) Lesson two "I'm healthy"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Fruits are .... and healthy.
   ⓐ salty ⓑ sweet ⓒ bad ⓓ busy
2. He is a/an .... He is doing some research about plants.
   ⓐ teacher ⓑ engineer ⓒ scientist ⓓ guide
3. Mom uses bananas and milk to make delicious bananas ....
   ⓐ milkshake ⓑ tea ⓒ burgers ⓓ soup
4. I don't drink cola because it is ....
   ⓐ healthy ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ good ⓓ delicious
5. My dad is a/an .... and he likes looking at plants and animals.
   ⓐ teacher ⓑ basketball player ⓒ scientist ⓓ interviewer
6. I don't eat .... It's unhealthy.
   ⓐ fruits ⓑ candy ⓒ bananas ⓓ vegetables
7. She's an active player. She .... three times a week.
   ⓐ walks ⓑ goes ⓒ practices ⓓ makes
8. Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
   ⓐ healthy ⓑ scary ⓒ tired ⓓ unhealthy
9. I think I'm .... I like to play basketball.
   ⓐ bad ⓑ sick ⓒ healthy ⓓ unhealthy

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. I want to play football, ... **(and)** my leg hurts.
2. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes .... **(but)** potatoes in Egypt.
3. I like burgers, ... **(and)** I only eat one a week.
4. I like to play football .... **(but)** tennis.
5. I don't eat candy, ... **(and)** I eat fruit.
6. He can speak English .... **(or)** Arabic.
7. I eat vegetables .... **(but)** I exercise.
8. I want to play football, ... **(and)** I'm ill.
9. I practice basketball .... **(but)** football.
10. I like chocolate .... **(but)** ice cream.
11. Nabil speaks English, ... **(and)** he can't speak Chinese.
12. I want to go swimming, ... **(and)** it is raining.
13. After school, I do my homework .... **(because)** I eat dinner.
14. I practice basketball .... **(or)** I walk home from school every day.
15. I don't drink cola, ... **(or)** I drink fresh juice.
16. I want to be healthy, ... **(and)** I don't like to eat vegetables.
17. Cats are cute .... **(but)** quiet.
18. I like reading stories .... **(but)** I like watching films, too.
19. Your cat is small, ... **(so)** my cat is big.
20. She is a tour guide .... **(but)** she likes reading about museums.
21. I can speak English .... **(or)** French.
22. We wash the potatoes .... **(but)** cut them into pieces.
23. I like chocolate ice cream, ... **(or)** my sister likes vanilla.

24. Moaz has a car, ... (and) he likes waking to his office.
25. I have one brother .... (but) two sisters.
26. She wants to buy a car, ... (and) she doesn't have enough money.
27. Mona sleeps early .... (but) wakes up early every day.
28. Mazen is a good player, ... (and) he needs to practice more.
29. They don't eat candy .... (but) they don't like cola.
30. I studied hard, ... (and) I didn't pass the exam.
31. She loves pizza, ... (and) she doesn't eat it.
32. The kids drink water .... (but) do a lot of sports at school.
33. My brother likes running, ... (and) he doesn't like swimming.
34. My mom likes reading .... (but) writing short stories.
35. I like oranges .... (but) bananas.
36. I want to eat pizza, ... (or) it isn't healthy.
37. I like playing tennis .... (and) I can't play well.
38. Milk is healthy .... (or) cola is unhealthy.
39. I want to plant a flower, ... (and) I don't have seeds.
40. I have candy .... (but) cola.
41. Let's .... (having) our breakfast.
42. I eat chicken .... (and) I eat fish.
43. He wants to play tennis .... (and) he is busy.
44. The horse is .... (short) than a camel. (الشرقية - 2024)
45. I play tennis .... (but) football. (الإسماعيلية - 2024)
46. She likes to play football, ... (and) she can't play it. (الشرقية - 2024)

➲ Punctate the following:

1. i do a lot of sports at school

....

2. my mom makes a delicious cake

....

(3) Lesson three "The empty pot"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....
   ⓐ desert ⓑ garden ⓒ school ⓓ palace
2. We .... our homework yesterday.
   ⓐ recycled ⓑ redid ⓒ repainted ⓓ recleaned
3. A/An .... is someone who looks after gardens.
   ⓐ scientist ⓑ emperor ⓒ gardener ⓓ king
4. We put the .... in the pot to grow.
   ⓐ seeds ⓑ water ⓒ food ⓓ candy
5. My friend is kind and ....
   ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ bad ⓓ unhealthy
6. Someone who is ...., does not lie.
   ⓐ beautiful ⓑ ugly ⓒ honest ⓓ happy
7. This plant is .... because it doesn't grow.
   ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ empty ⓓ good
10. My brother will try to win in the ....
   ⓐ competition ⓑ station ⓒ transportation ⓓ seed
11. The .... keeps the garden clean.
   ⓐ vet ⓑ bus driver ⓒ gardener ⓓ electrician

12. He is from .... He is Chinese.
ⓐ China ⓑ Egypt ⓒ Italy ⓓ France
13. The boy was very sad because he .... the game.
ⓐ asked ⓑ won ⓒ tried ⓓ lost
14. When the seed is ...., it cannot grow.
ⓐ good ⓑ dead ⓒ green ⓓ hard
15. Omar is really .... He never lies.
ⓐ honest ⓑ important ⓒ hard ⓓ dead
16. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
ⓐ farmer ⓑ plumber ⓒ king ⓓ gardener
17. My friend is kind and ....
ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ bad ⓓ unhealthy
18. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....
ⓐ desert ⓑ garden ⓒ school ⓓ palace
19. Cheng was good at looking .... his garden.
ⓐ at ⓑ for ⓒ after ⓓ from
20. An honest person doesn't ....
ⓐ talk ⓑ lie ⓒ work ⓓ win

➲ Punctate the following:

1. eman lived in China.

....

2. cheng was very good at growing things

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five "Writing"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Damietta is an Egyptian ....
ⓐ street ⓑ village ⓒ governorate ⓓ beach
2. The land in Damietta is rich in ....
ⓐ stars ⓑ birds ⓒ fish ⓓ nutrients
3. Domiate .... is very famous.
ⓐ cheese ⓑ sheep ⓒ chicken ⓓ chips
4. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
ⓐ Fishermen ⓑ Farmers ⓒ Teachers ⓓ Mechanics
5. We need to grow .... to make bread.
ⓐ lemons ⓑ potatoes ⓒ wheat ⓓ guava
6. My favourite fruit are .... and grapes.
ⓐ wheat ⓑ rice ⓒ guavas ⓓ milk
7. Fruits are healthy. They're rich in ....
ⓐ salt ⓑ nutrients ⓒ leaves ⓓ money
8. .... and sheep are animals we find on the farm.
ⓐ Elephants ⓑ Fish ⓒ Goats ⓓ Lions
9. About 1.5 million Egyptians live in Damietta ....
ⓐ governorate ⓑ town ⓒ village ⓓ country
10. .... in Damietta grow wheat, lemons, and grapes.
ⓐ Farmers ⓑ Animals ⓒ Fishermen ⓓ Fish
11. Fruits are .... in vitamins.
ⓐ poor ⓑ weak ⓒ rich ⓓ expensive
12. Cows, goats, and .... are animals that live in Damietta, too.
ⓐ wheat ⓑ sheep ⓒ rice ⓓ lemons

13. Farmers in Damietta grow many kinds of fruits like grapes and ....
ⓐ rice ⓑ wheat ⓒ guavas ⓓ cheese

14. Crops need a .... that is rich in nutrients to grow well.
ⓐ sea ⓑ governorate ⓒ farmer ⓓ land

15. Fishermen use .... catch fish.
ⓐ hotels ⓑ trees ⓒ nets ⓓ animals

16. Life is .... in Damietta. Many people live happily there.
ⓐ bad ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ good ⓓ difficult

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية - 2022)

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do farmers raise?

....

2. Summarize the text in two sentence?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Farmers grow fruits and ....
ⓐ cheese ⓑ chicken ⓒ vegetables ⓓ villages

4. Omar lives in a small ....
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ town ⓓ desert

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Life is good in Damietta.

....

2. What do farmers grow in damietta (بورسعيد - 2024)

....

(2) Unit two "Desert animals"

(1) Lesson one "Animals in desert"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The camel lives in the ....
ⓐ sea ⓑ sky ⓒ river ⓓ desert

2. Crocodiles are huge and ....
ⓐ cute ⓑ scary ⓒ small ⓓ young

3. Spiders are .... They eat insects.
ⓐ tall ⓑ funny ⓒ huge ⓓ helpful

4. It is .... to swim here. There are crocodiles.
ⓐ dangerous ⓑ cute ⓒ huge ⓓ ugly

5. The .... is a big animal.
ⓐ ant ⓑ bee ⓒ camel ⓓ spider

6. .... are huge and scary. They have sharp teeth.
ⓐ Birds ⓑ Insects ⓒ Lizards ⓓ Crocodiles

7. Both camels and .... live in the desert.
ⓐ crocodiles ⓑ fennec foxes ⓒ ducks ⓓ fish

8. .... don't have any legs, but they can move fast.
ⓐ Camels ⓑ Insects ⓒ Birds ⓓ Snakes

9. Different kinds of ………….. can fly.
ⓐ lizards ⓑ Snakes ⓒ birds ⓓ camels

10. ……………. eat insect and farmers like them.
ⓐ Crocodiles ⓑ Snakes ⓒ Camels ⓓ Spiders

11. …………….. are smaller than birds.
ⓐ Foxes ⓑ Crocodiles ⓒ Insects ⓓ Camels

12. The snake is very ……………. . I don't like it.
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ scary ⓒ cute ⓓ helpful

13. Egypt is a ………….. .
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ sea ⓓ country

14. The fennec fox has thick ……………… . (القليوبية - 2024)
ⓐ far ⓑ fur ⓒ for ⓓ fat

15. Camels can live without ……………. for a long time. (المنوفية - 2024)
ⓐ clothes ⓑ water ⓒ fur ⓓ feet

16. Look at those beautiful …………… flying in the sky.
ⓐ camels ⓑ crocodiles ⓒ birds ⓓ lizards

17. Spiders eat ……………. .
ⓐ insects ⓑ camels ⓒ birds ⓓ snakes

18. There are many animal that …………… in our country.
ⓐ live ⓑ need ⓒ think ⓓ play

19. Adam always helps his friends. He is very ……………. .
ⓐ help ⓑ helpless ⓒ helpful ⓓ bad

20. ……………. are very dangerous.
ⓐ Camels ⓑ Fish ⓒ Birds ⓓ Crocodiles

21. The …………… is a small type of foxes that live in the desert.
ⓐ bird ⓑ camel ⓒ fennec fox ⓓ snake

22. ……………. live in the deserts.
ⓐ Bears ⓑ Camels ⓒ Dolphins ⓓ Fish

23. Camels are perfect for the ……………. .
ⓐ sea ⓑ river ⓒ lake ⓓ desert

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

job – scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They do a very important **(1)** ………… . They eat **(2)** …………… ,birds and lizards. This **(3)** …………… the number of these small animal . We sometimes think some animals are **(4)** …………… or ugly, but they are all important.

huge – spiders – agree – snake – farmers

Last week, I visited the zoo with my parents. We saw many different animals there. The crocodile was **(1)** …………… . The **(2)** …………… was scary. We saw many **(3)** …………… . My sister thought spiders were ugly! Mom told us **(4)** …………… like spiders because they eat insects.

helpful – important – huge – animals – food

In our country, there are many **(1)** …………… There are crocodiles. They're **(2)** …………… and scary. There are also spiders. Spiders are very **(3)** …………… They eat insects. Animals are all **(4)** …………… .

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tarek and Sara's favorite subject at school is science. This week, they are studying animals that live in Egypt. Camels and fennec foxes are animals that live in the desert. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they control the number of small animals. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful. They eat small insects. That's why farmers like them. All animals are important.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do snakes and crocodiles do?

....

2. Why do farmers like spiders?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about .
ⓐ spiders and farmers ⓑ Tarek and Sara ⓒ animals in Egypt ⓓ science lessons
4. Camels and are animals that live in the desert.
ⓐ spiders ⓑ fennec foxes ⓒ crocodiles ⓓ insects

➲ Punctate the following:

1. farmers like spiders

....

2. They eat insects birds, and lizards

....

➲ Punctate the following:

1. snakes are scary animals (الدقهلية - 2024)

....

(2) Lesson two "Amazing desert animals"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Camels have flat ....
ⓐ teeth ⓑ legs ⓒ feet ⓓ humps
2. Camels are .... and beautiful.
ⓐ careful ⓑ flat ⓒ amazing ⓓ delicious
3. Camels are .... for the desert.
ⓐ sad ⓑ perfect ⓒ bad ⓓ large
4. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.
ⓐ meat ⓑ grass ⓒ sand ⓓ fish
5. We use .... to make clothes.
ⓐ fur ⓑ eyes ⓒ humps ⓓ hair
6. Mom made a .... cake for my birthday.
ⓐ strong ⓑ special ⓒ noisy ⓓ angry
7. Camels carry things and people to cross the ....
ⓐ sea ⓑ lake ⓒ river ⓓ desert
8. We can get delicious .... from camels.
ⓐ fur ⓑ cake ⓒ eggs ⓓ milk
9. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the .... from coming in.
ⓐ air ⓑ sand ⓒ water ⓓ light
10. Can you help me .... the street, please ?
ⓐ live ⓑ carry ⓒ stop ⓓ cross
11. **A:** How .... is a horse? **B:** It is about 459 kg. (المنوفية - 2022)
ⓐ fast ⓑ tall ⓒ heavy ⓓ long
12. Camels can live without .... for a long time.
ⓐ grass ⓑ water ⓒ air ⓓ sleep
13. We can use camels' fur to make .... !
ⓐ bags ⓑ clothes ⓒ hats ⓓ shoes

14. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't ………….. in sand.
ⓐ eat ⓑ drink ⓒ fly ⓓ sink

15. I saw a/an ………… movie with my family . I like it.
ⓐ bad ⓑ boring ⓒ amazing ⓓ heavy

16. How …………… is the horse? - It is 88 kph.
ⓐ fast ⓑ long ⓒ heavy ⓓ old

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. The blue car is ……………… **(fast)** than the red one.
2. Apples are ……………… **(healthy)** than candies.
3. Elephants are heavier ……………… **(that)** giraffes.
4. The city is ……………… **(noisy)** than the countryside.
5. Pizza is ……………… **(as)** delicious than a fish.
6. The fennec fox is ……………… **(small)** than other foxes.
7. A crocodile is ……………… **(most)** dangerous than a fish.
8. How ……………… **(heavy)** is the horse? - It's about 1.4 - 1.8 meters tall.
9. How ……………… **(fast)** is the horse ? - It is about 450 kg.
10. A turtle is ……………… **(slow)** than a rabbit.
11. Math is ……………… **(most)** difficult than science.
12. The cat is ……………… **(heavy)** than the mouse.
13. A snake is ……………… **(much)** dangerous than a dog.
14. How ……………… **(fast)** does the camel live ? - 40 years.
15. The park is ……………… **(busy)** during summer than winter.
16. The red flower is ……………… **(beautiful)** than the yellow one.
17. The camel is stronger ……………… **(then)** the horse.
18. Sami is ……………… **(tall)** than his sister.
19. Horses are ……………… **(most)** beautiful than fennec foxes.
20. The school is bigger, ……………… **(then)** the house.
21. I think the cat ……………… **(nice)** then the dog. (القاهرة - 2024)
22. Ola's dress is ……………… **(most)** colorful than my dress .
23. Nadia is more active ……………… **(that)** Heba.
24. Marwa thinks that fennec foxes are ……………… **(cute)** than crocodiles.
25. A crocodile is ……………… **(big)** than a dog. (اسكندرية- 2024)
26. Cars are ……………… **(most)** expensive than bikes.
27. The tiger is ……………… **(fast)** than all other animals.
1. The lion is ……………… **(dangerous)** than the giraffe.
2. The bear is stronger ……………… **(then)** the pelican. (المنوفية- 2024)
3. The cell phone is ……………… **(small)** than the laptop.
4. The car is ……………… **(fast)** than the bike.
5. The new house is ……………… **(nice)** than the old one.
6. My cousin is ……………… **(old)** than me.
7. My new car is ……………… **(expensive)** than yours.
8. I think math is easier ……………… **(then)** science.
28. Camels live ……………… **(long)** than horses.

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. camels are more beautiful than horses (القاهرة- 2024)

……………………………………………………………………………………

2. What s in a camel's hump

……………………………………………………………………………………

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

live – grass – faster – eyes – look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. They have large, beautiful **(1)** .... They can live in the desert, but they need people to **(2)** .... after them. Horses can **(3)** .... for 25 - 30 years. They're **(4)** .... than camels, but camels can live longer than horses.

❷

fresh – teeth – grass – play – animal

I like animals. My favorite **(1)** .... is the horse. I like riding on their backs. Horses have strong **(2)** .... They have large beautiful eyes. They like to eat **(3)** .... They drink **(4)** .... water.

(3) Lesson three "The pelican and the bear"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Bears have sharp ....
   ⓐ claws ⓑ tails ⓒ noses ⓓ fur
2. I feel .... I want something to eat.
   ⓐ sad ⓑ thirsty ⓒ hungry ⓓ angry
3. She's .... of animals, so she doesn't like to touch them.
   ⓐ happy ⓑ scared ⓒ kind ⓓ strong
4. The .... is a large animal that has paws and sharp claws.
   ⓐ pelican ⓑ bear ⓒ pear ⓓ fish
5. A pelican and a bear are in the ....
   ⓐ sea ⓑ desert ⓒ pond ⓓ river
6. They are both looking at a big, juicy ....
   ⓐ meat ⓑ chicken ⓒ fish ⓓ fruit
7. A: How do you ...., pelican? B: I am hungry.
   ⓐ watch ⓑ feed ⓒ feel ⓓ fly
8. The bear lifted its .... to take the fish out of the water.
   ⓐ paw ⓑ beak ⓒ head ⓓ ears
9. The .... is a big white bird that has a long beak.
   ⓐ fish ⓑ bee ⓒ pelican ⓓ bear
10. The bear is bigger and .... than the pelican.
    ⓐ smaller ⓑ stronger ⓒ weaker ⓓ thinner
11. The pelican uses its .... to catch fish.
    ⓐ beak ⓑ paw ⓒ hair ⓓ neck
12. A pelican opens its .... to catch the fish. (الدقهلية- 2024)
    ⓐ claw ⓑ beak ⓒ hand ⓓ paw
13. A pelican has a .... to eat with.
    ⓐ wing ⓑ tail ⓒ beak ⓓ paw

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

Beak – paw – juicy – water – lifts

A pelican and a bear are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, **(1)** .... fish. The bear **(2)** .... its paw. The pelican opens its **(3)** .... It is ready to take the fish out of **(4)** ....

paws – scary – eat – bears – sky

I'm soha. I love animals. My favorite animals are **(1)** .... Bears have strong **(2)** .... and sharp claws. They also have sharp teeth . They are **(3)** .... animals. They **(4)** ...... fish.

paw – looking – stronger – beak – water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are (1) .... at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) .... The pelican opens its (3) .... It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is (4) .... than the pelican.

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Where s my fish

....

2. i m bigger and stronger than you

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The fennec .... is smaller than other foxes.
ⓐ gazelle ⓑ camel ⓒ crocodile ⓓ fox
2. Rhim gazelles live in the ....
ⓐ forest ⓑ North Africa ⓒ Sahara Desert ⓓ sea
3. They walk around looking for grass and .... to eat.
ⓐ leaves ⓑ worms ⓒ birds ⓓ insects
4. The rhim gazelles yellow-white .... protects them from the sun.
ⓐ feet ⓑ horns ⓒ coat ⓓ head
5. Both rhim gazelles and fennec fox live in the ....
ⓐ rivers ⓑ desert ⓒ mountains ⓓ farms
6. The fennec fox has thick .... It helps the fennec fox stay warm.
ⓐ beak ⓑ feather ⓒ fur ⓓ wing
7. The rhim gazelle have long ....
ⓐ horns ⓑ wings ⓒ feathers ⓓ beaks
8. The fennec fox has .... ears.
ⓐ big ⓑ small ⓒ little ⓓ tiny
9. Rhim gazelles eat grass, ... , and plants.
ⓐ fish ⓑ leaves ⓒ mice ⓓ insects
10. A: How .... is a fennec fox? B: It weighs around 1 kilogram.
ⓐ heavy ⓑ long ⓒ tall ⓓ old
11. The .... eats insects, lizards, and small mica.
ⓐ camel ⓑ rhim gazelle ⓒ pelican ⓓ fennec fox
12. The fennec fox loses .... from its ears when it is hot in the desert.
ⓐ fur ⓑ food ⓒ water ⓓ heat
13. It's very .... in the desert. (الدقهلية - 2024)
ⓐ tall ⓑ hot ⓒ long ⓓ slow

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

sun – beautiful – live – grass – camels

There are lots of desert animals and the rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very (1) .... They eat (2) .... , leaves and plants. They don't need to drink a lot of water like (3) .... They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the (4) ....

❷

desert – kilogram – lizards – ears – heat

The fennec fox is the smallest of all the world's foxes. It is called desert fox. It lives in the (1) .... of North Africa. It weighs only one (2) .... It has big (3) .... It eats (4) .... and insects.

❸

heat – horns – insects – foxes – fur

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other (1) .... Its ears are big, really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear (2) .... and small animals. During the day, it is hot in desert. The fennec fox loses (3) .... from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick (4) .... keep it warm.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الفيوم – إدارة إطسا التعليمية - 2024)

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do rhim gazelles live?

....

2. Summarize the text in two sentence.

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Rhim gazelles eat ....
ⓐ meat ⓑ leaves ⓒ small animals ⓓ insects

4. Rhim gazelles have .... horns.
ⓐ short ⓑ small ⓒ long ⓓ big

➲ Punctate the following:

1. does a fennec fox live in Egypt

....

2. how heavy is a rhim gazelle

....

3. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North africa

....

(3) Unit three "Why do we grow plant"

(1) Lesson one "plants and seeds"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We .... mango trees in our garden.
ⓐ shout ⓑ swim ⓒ kill ⓓ grow

2. The farmer .... the crops to help them grow.
ⓐ waters ⓑ reads ⓒ writes ⓓ speaks

3. The sun helps the .... grow into plants.
ⓐ boats ⓑ chairs ⓒ seeds ⓓ desk

4. We need good .... to grow good plants.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ books ⓒ bags ⓓ pens

5. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called ....
ⓐ information ⓑ fraction ⓒ germination ⓓ cutting

6. The .... grows above the soil.
ⓐ water ⓑ soil ⓒ shoot ⓓ root

7. The green .... of the plants are amazing.
ⓐ claws ⓑ leaves ⓒ beaks ⓓ candies

8. We grow white flowers on the .... in our apartment.
ⓐ zoo ⓑ balcony ⓒ park ⓓ museum

9. Put the seed in the .... and water it.
ⓐ soil ⓑ fridge ⓒ shoot ⓓ air

10. .... grow under the soil. (الاسماعيلية- 2024)
ⓐ Shoots ⓑ Flowers ⓒ Roots ⓓ Leaves

11. Watermelons have black .... inside.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ leaves ⓒ roots ⓓ flowers

12. Plants need .... and water to grow.
ⓐ fruits ⓑ sunlight ⓒ sugar ⓓ flowers

13. We need .... and water to grow plants.
ⓐ fruits ⓑ leaves ⓒ soil ⓓ balcony

14. To grow a plant, you need to put a .... in the soil.
ⓐ leave ⓑ seed ⓒ shoot ⓓ root

15. I .... the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
ⓐ play ⓑ eat ⓒ sleep ⓓ water

16. I have a big .... in my house.
ⓐ seed ⓑ root ⓒ soil ⓓ balcony

17. We .... a seed, and it grows.
ⓐ plant ⓑ come ⓒ take ⓓ become

18. The .... is the part of the plant that grows taller above the soil.
ⓐ seed ⓑ root ⓒ shoot ⓓ fruit

19. Tomato have seeds ....
ⓐ upside ⓑ inside ⓒ outside ⓓ beside

20. Tomatoes are .... before they are red. (البحيرة- 2024)
ⓐ red ⓑ blue ⓒ white ⓓ green

21. You need to wait for the tomato .... to be fruits to eat them.
ⓐ shoots ⓑ leaves ⓒ flowers ⓓ seeds

22. When the shoot grows taller above the soil, it usually has green ....
ⓐ soil ⓑ seeds ⓒ roots ⓓ leaves

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

grows – roots – leaves – sunlight – red

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1) .... and water, so it can grow. The seed grows (2) .... under the soil. Then it (3) .... a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows (4) .... and flowers. That is called germination.

❷

water – flowers – soil – roots – shoot (القاهرة- 2024)

We put a seed in the (1) .... The seed needs sunlight and (2) .... So it can grow. The seed grows (3) .... under the soil. Then, it grows a ashoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and (4) ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tomatoes are delicious and healthy. We use tomatoes in most of our food. We grow tomatoes on our balcony. Mom always takes fresh tomatoes and makes us delicious salad. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seed and grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence?

....

2. What does mom use the fresh tomatoes for?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text is about " .... plants "
   ⓐ Guava　ⓑ Tomato　ⓒ Mango　ⓓ peas
4. We should .... the plant every day to grow.
   ⓐ ask　ⓑ hurt　ⓒ water　ⓓ cut

We plant tomatoes on the balcony. We are happy to see the plants grow. They have fruits and flowers. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant growes. That is called the germination process. Our science teacher says plants need sunlight and water so that they can grow.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do tomatoes have inside ?

....

2. What is the germination process ?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
   ⓐ farm　ⓑ science　ⓒ soil　ⓓ germination
4. Plants need .... and water to grow.
   ⓐ flowers　ⓑ sunlight　ⓒ science　ⓓ fruits

Punctate the following:

1. can you see the leaves and the flowers

....

2. that's awesome! I found a red tomato　(الدقهلية- 2024)

....

(2) Lesson two "plants in Egypt"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An .... is a place where living things live and grow.
   ⓐ habitat　ⓑ office　ⓒ first station　ⓓ hospital
2. Lotus flowers grow near the .... They need a lot of water.
   ⓐ desert　ⓑ rocks　ⓒ river　ⓓ mountain
3. .... work in the agricultural habitat.
   ⓐ Engineers　ⓑ Farmers　ⓒ Vets　ⓓ Teachers
4. Acacia grows in the desert ....
   ⓐ ice　ⓑ hobby　ⓒ habitat　ⓓ room
5. Silver rings are expensive, but gold rings are the .... expensive rings.
   ⓐ more　ⓑ most　ⓒ less　ⓓ much
6. The daisy is the smallest flower and it lives the ....
   ⓐ short　ⓑ shortest　ⓒ shorter　ⓓ a short
7. Butterflies are the .... colorful insects.
   ⓐ more　ⓑ many　ⓒ most　ⓓ much
8. Acacia tree grows in .... habitat. It doesn't need a lot of water.　(البحيرة- 2024)
   ⓐ rivers　ⓑ agricultural　ⓒ desert　ⓓ lakes
9. Farmer work in the .... habitat. They grow food for us to eat.
   ⓐ desert　ⓑ agricultural　ⓒ river　ⓓ lake
10. Both bean plants and .... grow in the agricultural habitat.
   ⓐ reed　ⓑ acacia　ⓒ orange tree　ⓓ tamarisk

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. My city is the .... (nice) place to live.
2. I think the crocodile is the .... (scarier) animal.
3. He is the .... (faster) boy in our class.
4. My brother is .... (then) strongest player in the team
5. Elephants are the .... (bigger) animals.
6. Which animal is the .... (scary) ?
7. The sunflower is the .... (heavy) .
8. The giraffe is the .... (taller) land animal.
9. The Sahara Desert is the .... (hot) desert.
10. I think pizza is the .... (more) delicious food.
11. Soha is the .... (tall) girl in the class.
12. What is the .... (small) bird in the world ?
13. This mountain is the .... (higher) mountain in the world.
14. Marwan is the .... (smart) boy in math.
15. What is the .... (more) expensive bag in the shop ?
16. The blue whale is the .... (bigger) animal.
17. My father is the .... (brave) person in my family.
18. The turtle is .... (than) slowest animal.
19. The elephant is the .... (heavier) land animal.
20. Hala's red dress is the .... (nice) one.
21. Crocodiles and snakes are the .... (more) dangerous animals.
22. A snake is the .... (scary) animal.
23. Bikes are .... (slow) than cars.
24. The lion is the .... (more) dangerous animal.
25. Roses live longer than daisies. But sunflowers live the .... (long).
26. Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the .... (more) beautiful flowers.
27. Ali is the .... (kind). He helps all his friends.
28. History books are the .... (more) interesting books.
29. Noha is the .... (good) student in the class.
30. My brother thinks math is .... (bad) subject.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

farmers – rivers – tamarisk – agricultural – habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the (1) .... habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near (2) .... and lakes. Acacia and (3) .... trees grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this (4) .... don't need much water to grow.

❶

rain – seed – rivers – desert – farmers

(الاسماعيلية- 2024)

In the agricultural habitat, (1) .... grow food for us to eat. Plants near the (2) .... and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the (3) ....don't need a lot of water. There isn't much (4) .... in the desert so we can find the acacia plant and tamarisk there.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Rivers and lakes are also plants habitats. Plants **near** the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. But in the desert habitat, plants don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert. Acacia plant and tamarisk grow in the desert.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What is a habitat ?

....

2. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is about " .... " .
   ⓐ Plant habitats ⓑ Clothes ⓒ festivals ⓓ Houses

The underlined word **"near"** is the opposite of ....
   ⓐ far ⓑ close ⓒ behind ⓓ about

➲ Punctate the following:

1. how big is the flower

....

2. the sunflower is the heaviest flower

....

3. how long does it live

....

(3) Lesson three

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... air is very dangerous for our bodies.
   ⓐ Clean ⓑ Healthy ⓒ Polluted ⓓ Green
2. She .... fresh fruits at the market.
   ⓐ made ⓑ bought ⓒ changed ⓓ decided
3. They plant many crops and raise animals on the ....
   ⓐ tree ⓑ sunlight ⓒ air ⓓ farm
4. Someone who always helps people is ....
   ⓐ helpful ⓑ helpless ⓒ helpfully ⓓ help
5. Soha is .... and cute.
   ⓐ beautiful ⓑ beauty ⓒ more beauty ⓓ as beauty
6. These dresses are ....
   ⓐ color ⓑ colors ⓒ colorful ⓓ colorfully
7. She usually .... about her children.
   ⓐ careful ⓑ cares ⓒ carefully ⓓ careless
8. My sister likes the .... of nature.
   ⓐ beauty ⓑ beautiful ⓒ beautifully ⓓ more beautiful
9. When there is no water in the land, it becomes ....
   ⓐ wet ⓑ dry ⓒ good ⓓ fresh
10. They used .... to water the seeds.
   ⓐ rainwater ⓑ air ⓒ heat ⓓ sun
11. I don't like the .... air in the city.
   ⓐ clear ⓑ fresh ⓒ polluted ⓓ clean
12. He is .... of his parents. They did many useful things.
   ⓐ scared ⓑ afraid ⓒ full ⓓ proud
13. The air is polluted and it's noisy in the ....
   ⓐ farm ⓑ city ⓒ desert ⓓ village
14. Lucas's grandparents used rainwater to .... the seeds.
   ⓐ buy ⓑ bring ⓒ water ⓓ plant
15. A .... is a thousand million.
   ⓐ billion ⓑ hundred ⓒ thousand ⓓ hundred million

16. Mona is always .... when she crosses the road.
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ careful ⓒ colorful ⓓ useful
17. Nour had two .... of cake.
ⓐ slippers ⓑ swans ⓒ slices ⓓ switch
18. Use the .... to turn the lights on, please.
ⓐ slice ⓑ swan ⓒ sweet ⓓ switch
19. Nader helps his mother and .... the floor.
ⓐ sleeps ⓑ swims ⓒ sweeps ⓓ switch
20. Mom has a pair of blue .... She only wear them at home.
ⓐ switches ⓑ slippers ⓒ sweets ⓓ slices

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Salma is a .... **(beauty)** girl.
2. My brother likes .... **(colorfully)** flowers.
3. Ali is a .... **(care)** driver. He drives carefully.
4. This book is .... **(use)** . I will read it again.
5. The flowers in the garden are very .... **(beauty)**.
6. Be .... **(care)** when you cut the vegetables with a knife.
7. Shady is .... **(help)** and kind to other people.
8. Noha likes wearing .... **(color)** clothes.
9. Reading is very .... **(use)**.
10. My dad uses some .... **(use)** tools to fix his car.
11. Be .... **(care)** when you use the knife.
12. Marwa has a .... **(beauty)** pink dress.
13. Parrots are .... **(color)** birds. You can see them at the zoo.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

flowers – green – billion – proud – life

My grandparents had a farm. They had a good (1) .... there. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a (2) .... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) .... They planted trees and (4) ....

desert land – green – rainwater – life – seeds

Today, Lara lives on a special farm with her mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good (1) .... They plant millions of (3) .... to make the land green. They use billions of liters of (2) .... to plant the seeds. Lara knows it's important to turn the (4) .... into farmland because it helps them get more crops.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds, They used rainwater to water the seed. **They** planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his parents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His parents are very proud of his grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

....

2. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. They planted millions of ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ flowers ⓒ festivals ⓓ farms
4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to Adam's ....
ⓐ friends ⓑ parents ⓒ grandparents ⓓ sisters

➲ Punctate the following:

1. i live on a farm

....

2. who is lucas

....

3. He lives on a farm in the united states

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The sunflower opens and .... the sun.
   ⓐ closes ⓑ faces ⓒ puts ⓓ drops
2. Baskets and sandals in Ancient Egypt were made from ....
   ⓐ glass ⓑ papyrus ⓒ cotton ⓓ water
3. The sunflower dies and the life .... begins again.
   ⓐ cycle ⓑ time ⓒ boat ⓓ style
4. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm .... to grow.
   ⓐ feather ⓑ stem ⓒ forest ⓓ weather
5. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make .... and baskets.
   ⓐ beds ⓑ clothes ⓒ sandals ⓓ walls
6. .... was famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
   ⓐ Tomato ⓑ Sunflower ⓒ papyrus ⓓ sandal
7. Papyrus needs a lot of water and .... weather to grow quickly.
   ⓐ hot ⓑ cold ⓒ warm ⓓ freezing
8. .... , you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.
   ⓐ First ⓑ After first ⓒ After ⓓ Finally
9. When the seed .... , it grows roots under the soil.
   ⓐ opens ⓑ germinates ⓒ faces ⓓ drops
10. You need to put the seed in the .... and water it to grow.
    ⓐ basket ⓑ river ⓒ sunlight ⓓ roots
11. .... a few weeks, the plant grows leaves and flowers.
    ⓐ Next ⓑ After ⓒ Finally ⓓ First
12. When the tomato plant dies, it .... its seeds.
    ⓐ grows ⓑ plants ⓒ germinates ⓓ drops
13. After about 4 months, the .... opens and faces the sun.
    ⓐ shoot ⓑ seed ⓒ root ⓓ sunflower
14. We need .... to grow plant.
    ⓐ seeds ⓑ trees ⓒ fruits ⓓ flower
15. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the ....
    ⓐ sea ⓑ beach ⓒ farm ⓓ river
16. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.
    ⓐ sunflowers ⓑ papyrus ⓒ reed ⓓ rose

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

useful – drink – grow – oil – yellow

A sunflower is a big flower. It's always **(1)** .... in color. Sunflowers need a lot of sun to **(2)**................ . Sunflower seeds also have a lot of **(3)** .... in them and people use it for cooking a lot of kinds of foods such as rice, fried potatoes and onions. It's a very beautiful and **(4)**................... flower.

roots – sun – After that – germinates – months

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed (1)................ and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2) .... , the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 (3)................ , it opens and foces the (4) ....

warm – sandals – famous – river – mountain

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1)................ because Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2)................ and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3)................weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the (4) ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing a lot of plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant .

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did papyrus grow ?

....

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make ?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about " .... " .
ⓐ Lotus ⓑ Rose ⓒ Papyrus ⓓ Tomatoes

4. Papyrus needs a lot of .... To grow.
ⓐ sand ⓑ waves ⓒ water ⓓ paper

➲ Punctate the following:

1. why do farmers grow sunflowers

....

2. Ancient egyptian used papyrus to make paper

....

3. why do farmers grow sunflower

....

4. papyrus grow in the nile delta

....

(4) Unit four "Where do you live"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I can see the whole street from the ....
ⓐ balcony ⓑ bedroom ⓒ bathroom ⓓ kitchen

2. In the desert people live in ....
ⓐ houseboats ⓑ balconies ⓒ apartments ⓓ tents

3. I sleep in a big .... It has two big beds.
ⓐ bathroom ⓑ bedroom ⓒ living room ⓓ kitchen

4. I play computer games in the .... where there is a big TV.
ⓐ kitchen ⓑ living room ⓒ bathroom ⓓ balcony

5. My mom cooks food in the ....
ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ bathroom ⓓ living room

6. My friend lives on a .... She loves living on water.
ⓐ tent ⓑ houseboat ⓒ garden ⓓ balcony

7. My aunt moved to a new .... last week. It's in a big building.
ⓐ tent ⓑ houseboat ⓒ house ⓓ room
8. You shouldn't play in the ....
ⓐ club ⓑ street ⓒ garden ⓓ park
9. The .... is the room where I eat dinner with my family.
ⓐ garden ⓑ bathroom ⓒ dining room ⓓ balcony
10. Omar likes watching television with his family in the ....
ⓐ living room ⓑ kitchen ⓒ tent ⓓ bathroom
11. He takes a shower in the ....
ⓐ living room ⓑ bedroom ⓒ bathroom ⓓ garden
12. My mother is making dinner in the ....
ⓐ houseboat ⓑ dining room ⓒ kitchen ⓓ balcony
13. You should .... your room by yourself.
ⓐ eat ⓑ sleep ⓒ organize ⓓ move
14. .... are made of cloth.
ⓐ Houseboats ⓑ Tents ⓒ Houses ⓓ Apartments

Read and complete the text with the words:

beds – garden – rooms – living room – house (بورسعيد- 2024)

My grandparents lives in a big (1) .... It's on the corner of the city. It has many rooms. There are two (2) .... in my bedroom. They have a big (3) .... with television and a couch. I love playing with my cousins in the (4) ....

Read the following then answer the questions:

(السويس- 2024)

My name is Hazem. I'm in grade four. I live in a **big** house with my family. We have three bedrooms and one bathroom. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch television in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hazem watch television?

....

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Hazem's father is a ....
ⓐ teacher ⓑ doctor ⓒ farmer ⓓ fisherman
4. The opposite of the underlined word "**big**" is ....
ⓐ huge ⓑ small ⓒ enormous ⓓ giant

Punctate the following:

1. they have a big balcony

....

2. which is your favorite room (القاهرة- 2024)

....

(2) Lesson two

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister goes to .... to learn.
ⓐ school ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ post office ⓓ office
2. Noha went to the .... when she was sick.
ⓐ school ⓑ office ⓒ hospital ⓓ supermarket

3. They went to the .... to buy food.
ⓐ supermarket ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ office ⓓ hospital
4. Can you tell me where the .... is? I want to send a letter.
ⓐ hospital ⓑ school ⓒ post office ⓓ office
5. Ola works in a/an .... It has many desks and computers.
ⓐ hospital ⓑ park ⓒ supermarket ⓓ office
6. Nadia went to the .... to buy some new clothes.
ⓐ park ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ office ⓓ school
7. Fish live .... water.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ behind ⓓ between
8. A: .... is the key? B: It's on the table.
ⓐ What ⓑ Where ⓒ When ⓓ How
9. My school is .... of the shopping mall.
ⓐ next ⓑ behind ⓒ above ⓓ in front
10. Ola's house is .... the school and the city park.
ⓐ between ⓑ next to ⓒ on ⓓ behind
11. The bridge is .... the river.
ⓐ in ⓑ under ⓒ above ⓓ next
12. The pet is hiding .... the door.
ⓐ in front ⓑ between ⓒ next ⓓ behind
13. My house is .... to the Nile.
ⓐ in front ⓑ above ⓒ on ⓓ next
14. **A:** Can you see the pen? **B:** It's .... the book.
ⓐ next ⓑ between ⓒ under ⓓ in front
15. My book is .... the table. I can't see it. (الإسماعيلية- 2024)
ⓐ next ⓑ in front of ⓒ behind ⓓ on
16. The hospital is .... the shopping mall and the park.
ⓐ next ⓑ in front ⓒ on ⓓ between
17. Sara went to the .... to send a letter.
ⓐ school ⓑ hospital ⓒ post office ⓓ park
18. **A:** .... is the park? **B:** It's behind the office.
ⓐ When ⓑ Why ⓒ Where ⓓ Who
19. **A:** Where can I send .... ? **B:** In the post office.
ⓐ food ⓑ clothes ⓒ letters ⓓ games
20. Excuse me! Where is the .... ? I want to buy some food.
ⓐ school ⓑ hospital ⓒ supermarket ⓓ shopping mall
21. My dad goes to the .... when he feels sick.
ⓐ post office ⓑ hospital ⓒ office ⓓ supermarket
22. I can buy some new .... at the shopping mall.
ⓐ shoes ⓑ houses ⓒ tents ⓓ letters
23. My children never go to the .... on Friday. It's a holiday.
ⓐ supermarket ⓑ hospital ⓒ school ⓓ shopping mall

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. .... **(How)** is my book? – On the table.
2. There is a chair .... **(in)** to the table.
3. Put your books .... **(under)** your bag, please.
4. The shopping mall is in front .... **(on)** the bank. (القاهرة - 2024)
5. The roots grow .... **(behind)** the soil.
6. The house is .... **(next)** the school and the supermarket.
7. The book is .... **(in)** the table. (أسوان - 2024)

8. Nadeen is hiding .... (in front of) the tree.
9. The cat is .... (on) the table. I can't see it.
10. There are ten apples .... (in front) the fruit basket.
11. A: .... (What) is the city bank, please? B: It's next to the park.
12. Look at the beautiful kite flying .... (under) the building.
13. The car is .... (in) the bike and the bus.
14. Where .... (are) the shopping mall.
15. The kitchen is next .... (of) the living room. (القاهرة - المرج - 2024)

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

play – school – place – supermarket – buy (القاهرة- 2024)

I love my town. It is a good (1) .... to live in. It is small, but it has (2) .... offices, schools, and many other places. I walk to (3) .... every morning to learn. My school is next to the park. I (4) .... in the park with my friends.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيزة- 2024)

My name is Soha. I live in a small city. My city has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a school. I go to school by bus. My school is next to the hospital. I go to the park to play tennis. I go to the supermarket to buy different foods and drinks. I love my city.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Soha buy different foods and drinks?

....

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Soha's school is .... the hospital.
ⓐ behind ⓑ next to ⓒ in front of ⓓ between
4. Soha plays tennis in the ....
ⓐ school ⓑ park ⓒ supermarket ⓓ between

(3) Lesson three

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It is hot today. We need to turn on the .... (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ bus ⓑ van ⓒ fan ⓓ fish
2. Excuse me! .... is the post office?
ⓐ When ⓑ Why ⓒ Where ⓓ Who
3. To go to the mall, go .... ahead, then turn left.
ⓐ street ⓑ straight ⓒ right ⓓ corner
4. Hana's house is .... the supermarket and the school.
ⓐ between ⓑ next ⓒ in front ⓓ on
5. .... the second left. My house is on the right.
ⓐ Travel ⓑ Go ⓒ Take ⓓ Come
6. Sherif .... English and Chinese.
ⓐ says ⓑ meets ⓒ speaks ⓓ shouts
7. The hospital is .... the corner.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ on
8. Go straight and .... left.
ⓐ take ⓑ turn ⓒ see ⓓ come
9. The post office is .... the left.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ between

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Excuse me! .... **(What)** is the supermarket, please?
2. .... **(Turning)** left, my house is on the corner.
3. .... **(Went)** straight ahead. Then turn left.
4. The school is .... **(in)** the corner of South Street.
5. .... **(Took)** the second left at the supermarket.
6. The hospital is .... **(next)** the school and the supermarket.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

summer – down – meet – parents – world (القاهرة- 2024)

I live on a boat in the summer. My **(1)** .... work on tourist boats, so I go with them. We travel up and **(2)** .... the Nile. I like the **(3)** .... very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the **(4)** ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My friend Sherif is from Aswan. He lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many **interesting** places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with tourists.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do Sherif's parents work?

....

2. Where is Sherif from? (القاهرة- 2024)

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Sherif likes the .... very much.
ⓐ winter ⓑ fall ⓒ summer ⓓ spring
4. The underlined word "**interesting**" means.
ⓐ nice ⓑ boring ⓒ bad ⓓ old

➲ Punctate the following:

1. my friend Sherif lives on a boat

....

2. i can speak English and arabic. (الغربية- 2024)

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there. (الغربية - 2024)
ⓐ schools ⓑ offices ⓒ beaches ⓓ stores
2. Mariam lives in a .... called Hurghada.
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ country ⓓ beach
3. About 190,000 people .... in Hurghada.
ⓐ come ⓑ swim ⓒ live ⓓ work
4. The .... is where tourists can go on safaris.
ⓐ beach ⓑ park ⓒ bazaars ⓓ Sahara Desert
5. We can buy beautiful things at the .... in Sahl Hasheesh.
ⓐ bazaars ⓑ tourists ⓒ photos ⓓ gardens
6. We can buy food at the .... where Mona works.
ⓐ desert ⓑ beach ⓒ supermarket ⓓ safari park

7. When we buy the food, Mona .... the food is fresh.
ⓐ eats ⓑ sells ⓒ sees ⓓ checks

8. The worker at the supermarket helps us when we can't .... something.
ⓐ find ⓑ live ⓒ go ⓓ meet

9. There's a beach and lots of .... things to do in Hurghada.
ⓐ scary ⓑ boring ⓒ interesting ⓓ strange

10. Soha is .... She helps everyone in her class.
ⓐ bad ⓑ kind ⓒ noisy ⓓ ugly

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

kind – food – supermarket – fresh – office

This is Hana. She works at the **(1)** .... *near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy* **(2)** .... *. Hana checks the food is* **(3)** .... *. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very* **(4)** .... *and happy. We all love her.*

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safari. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. **It** has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Hurghada?

....

2. What are there in Sahl Hasheesh?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ Cairo ⓑ Aswan ⓒ Luxor ⓓ Hurghada

4. The underlined word "**it**" refer to ....
ⓐ the Red Sea ⓑ the beaches ⓒ Sahl Hasheesh ⓓ Sahara desert

➲ Punctate the following:

1. mona works at the supermarket (المنيا - 2024)

....

2. how many people live there

....

(5) Unit five "Where do you work"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Youssef is a/an .... He loves making things work.
ⓐ bus driver ⓑ garbage collector ⓒ electrician ⓓ mail carrier

2. Here's the .... He collects the trash.
ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ bus driver ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ electrician

3. A plumber fixes .... and faucets.
ⓐ chairs ⓑ pipes ⓒ balls ⓓ cars

4. My room was .... yesterday. I had to tidy it.
ⓐ difficult ⓑ wet ⓒ messy ⓓ young

5. A/An .... drives to many different places.
ⓐ mechanic ⓑ driver ⓒ plumber ⓓ electrician

6. A/An .... brings us the parcels.
ⓐ garbage collector ⓑ bus driver ⓒ mail carrier ⓓ mechanic

7. The .... helps us fix pipes to get water. He is very important. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ tourist guide ⓑ plumber ⓒ electrician ⓓ mail carrier

8. A .... helps us all. He takes away all the trash. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ garbage collector ⓒ builder ⓓ mechanic

9. The .... fix the cars and buses. (بورسعيد - 2024)
ⓐ electricians' ⓑ mechanics ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ plumbers

10. Cairo produces around 20 million tons of .... every year.
ⓐ pipes ⓑ parcels ⓒ garbage ⓓ faucets

11. Plumbers fix pipes and .... (القاهرة- 2024)
ⓐ tables ⓑ chairs ⓒ cars ⓓ faucets

12. The .... arrived. Let's get on the bus.
ⓐ mechanic ⓑ bus driver ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ plumber

13. My clothes become .... after raining.
ⓐ dry ⓑ hoy ⓒ wet ⓓ near

14. I was much better at .... pipes and faucets than cars.
ⓐ fixing ⓑ driving ⓒ eating ⓓ reading

15. We need a mechanic to .... our car.
ⓐ drive ⓑ paint ⓒ play ⓓ fix

16. A mail carrier brings us ....
ⓐ pipes ⓑ faucets ⓒ parcels ⓓ cars

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

Mail carrier – mechanic – trash – electrician – faucets (القاهرة- 2024)

Different people have different jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and **(1)** .... A mechanic fixes cars. An **(2)** .... makes things work. A **(3)** .... has our parcels. A garbage collector takes the **(4)** .... I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(المنوفية- 2024)

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers our parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to make our life easier.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does a mechanic do?

....

2. Why should all workers work together?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ food ⓑ animals ⓒ jobs ⓓ places

4. The word ".........." in the text means garbage.
ⓐ trash ⓑ faucets ⓒ fixes ⓓ places

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Dad do you like your job

....

(2) Lesson two

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Electricity is .... but we need it.
   ⓐ safe ⓑ dangerous ⓒ wet ⓓ slow
2. We should use electricity ....
   ⓐ fast ⓑ slowly ⓒ quickly ⓓ safely
3. To make the machine work, put the .... into a socket.
   ⓐ bug ⓑ storm ⓒ plug ⓓ hand
4. .... are Ola's new tools.
   ⓐ That ⓑ This ⓒ The ⓓ Those
5. Don't touch .... socket. It's dangerous.
   ⓐ than ⓑ these ⓒ those ⓓ this
6. .... house over there is very old.
   ⓐ They ⓑ These ⓒ That ⓓ Those
7. .... is such a nice place to live in.
   ⓐ These ⓑ They ⓒ This ⓓ Those
8. An electric shock can .... us.
   ⓐ travel ⓑ practice ⓒ use ⓓ burn
9. We sometimes see a flash of .... in a storm. (المنوفية- 2024)
   ⓐ faucet ⓑ water ⓒ shock ⓓ lightning
10. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands. It's very dangerous. (المنوفية- 2024)
   ⓐ cute ⓑ dry ⓒ wet ⓓ small
11. .... are my books.
   ⓐ That ⓑ Those ⓒ This ⓓ The
12. .... bird is so near. I can see it well.
   ⓐ That ⓑ This ⓒ They ⓓ Those

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. This .... (are) the mail carrier. (الإسكندرية- 2024)
2. Those .... (is) my pencils. (القاهرة- 2024)
3. That .... (are) your pen. (البحيرة- 2024)
4. These .... (is) the electrician's tools. (دمياط- 2024)
5. This .... (are) a socket. (القاهرة- 2024)
6. Look at .... (those) butterfly outside! It's flying away.
7. .... (This) are the plumber's tools. (القاهرة- 2024)
8. This car .... (are) very expensive.
9. Nour found .... (that) shells on the beach last summer.
10. .... (Those) cloud look like a teddy bear.
11. .... (This) are Noha and Ola. They are my best friends.
12. Can you get .... (those) apple on the cupboard?
13. .... (That) mountains are very high.
14. Let's water .... (this) plants together.
15. .... (This) shoes look very expensive.
16. .... (That) flowers over there are very beautiful.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

electrician – fast – year – flash – dangerous

Mazen wants to be an (1) .... Electricity is very (2) .... so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very (3) .... close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a (4) .... of lightning.

➲ Punctate the following:

1. is electricity dangerous (القاهرة- 2023)

....

(3) Lesson three

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hana used the .... to open old radios and cell phones.
 ⓐ blocks ⓑ tape measure ⓒ screwdriver ⓓ cousins
2. Amir is always .... He's never angry.
 ⓐ careful ⓑ sad ⓒ sorry ⓓ patient
3. My daughter is a/an .... She is eighteen.
 ⓐ child ⓑ baby ⓒ adult ⓓ cousin
4. Talia always carried a tape .... and a pencil.
 ⓐ measure ⓑ doll ⓒ block ⓓ screwdriver
5. My sister is .... She loves to know everything.
 ⓐ patient ⓑ curious ⓒ favorite ⓓ little
6. My father is an electrician. He can fix ....
 ⓐ tables ⓑ pipes ⓒ radios ⓓ faucets
7. I use my .... to speak with my friends.
 ⓐ blocks ⓑ cell phone ⓒ screwdriver ⓓ tape measure
8. The teacher .... the new lesson very well.
 ⓐ explained ⓑ carried ⓒ changed ⓓ opened

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. When Lara .... (is) little, she loved to experiment.
2. Amir .... (help) all his friends when he was young.
3. When my sister .... (is) a child, she played with blocks. (المنوفية- 2024)
4. When Nadia was young, she .... (start) making new things.
5. Dad .... (use) the screwdriver to open the cell phone yesterday.
6. Nour .... (be) never angry when he was little.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a (1) .... and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had (2) .... Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about (3) .... with electricity. Now, Lama is an (4) .... and she loves her job very much.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية- 2024)

When Salma was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Salma when you want to change something in your house.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Salma can work as an electrician or an architect in the future?

....

2. Why did Salma use the tape measure?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text talks about ....
ⓐ Heba ⓑ Mona ⓒ Salma's sister ⓓ Salma

4. When Salma was a baby, she played with ....
ⓐ blocks ⓑ dolls ⓒ cars ⓓ bikes

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. Lara Talia, and amir are all adults

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Pros" are the .... points about something.
ⓐ bad ⓑ good ⓒ easy ⓓ difficult

2. One of the .... of being a mail carrier is carrying heavy mail bags.
ⓐ pros ⓑ ants ⓒ cons ⓓ tons

3. A mail carrier works .... all day.
ⓐ at home ⓑ at office ⓒ inside ⓓ outside

4. It's great for the mail carrier when the weather is ....
ⓐ hot ⓑ windy ⓒ cold ⓓ good

5. .... likes meeting the mail carrier.
ⓐ Everybody ⓑ Nobody ⓒ No one ⓓ No people

6. Being a mail carrier is not a/an .... job.
ⓐ good ⓑ important ⓒ easy ⓓ useful

7. There are many .... that made our school.
ⓐ doctors ⓑ teachers ⓒ workers ⓓ students

8. The .... fix the cars and buses that bring children to school.
ⓐ plumbers ⓑ cleaners ⓒ electricians ⓓ mechanics

9. .... keep the school clean.
ⓐ Bus drivers ⓑ Teachers ⓒ Cleaners ⓓ Plumbers

10. The .... help us use lights.
ⓐ cleaners ⓑ doctors ⓒ electricians ⓓ mail carriers

11. The electrician connects .... (القاهرة- 2024)
ⓐ bus ⓑ bag ⓒ garbage ⓓ electricity

12. Our .... bring the children to school.
ⓐ garbage collectors ⓑ mechanics ⓒ plumbers ⓓ bus drivers

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

mail carrier – nice – hot – walk – outside

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are **(1)** .... all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very **(2)** .... or cold. Mail carriers **(3)** .... all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes meeting the **(4)** ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I want to be a mail carrier. But I will be outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. My brother Ali wants to be an electrician to connect electricity so that people can use lights easily. My friend Maged wants to be a bus driver to bring the children to school. My friend Noha wants to be a mechanic to fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Maged want to be a bus driver?

....

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali wants to be a/an ....
   ⓐ engineer ⓑ electrician ⓒ mail carrier ⓓ teacher
4. .... wants to be a mechanic.
   ⓐ Tamer ⓑ Maged ⓒ Noha ⓓ Father

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. workers keep the school clean (الشرقية- 2024)

....

2. what does the bus driver do (المنوفية- 2024)

....

(6) Unit six "What do you do"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars, buses, and trains are forms of ....
   ⓐ foods ⓑ colors ⓒ transportation ⓓ schools
2. Ahmed is a .... He works in the tourism industry.
   ⓐ farmer ⓑ librarian ⓒ guide ⓓ fisherman
3. Fishermen use nets and .... to catch fish.
   ⓐ animals ⓑ hotels ⓒ schools ⓓ boats
4. My father is a farmer. He works in the .... industry.
   ⓐ farming ⓑ fishing ⓒ education ⓓ tourism
5. Habiba is a guide. She works with .... from all over the world.
   ⓐ boats ⓑ fish ⓒ tourists ⓓ animals
6. Before you pick up the fruit, you give them .... to grow.
   ⓐ books ⓑ nutrients ⓒ nets ⓓ hotels
7. A .... works in seas or rivers. He catches a lot of fish. (الشرقية- 2024)
   ⓐ plumber ⓑ teacher ⓒ fisherman ⓓ guide
8. .... grow food for us.
   ⓐ Farmers ⓑ Teachers ⓒ Doctors ⓓ Vets
9. Teachers work in the .... industry.
   ⓐ farming ⓑ tourism ⓒ education ⓓ fishing
10. A farmer sends the fruit to the .... to make orange juice.
   ⓐ hotel ⓑ library ⓒ sea ⓓ factory

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. I .... (be) a farmer and I work in the farming industry.
2. My father .... (be) a librarian.
3. They .... (be) guides. They work in the tourism industry.
4. The fisherman .... (wake) up early and goes out on his boat.
5. Mom .... (sell) fish in the market.
6. We .... (sending) the oranges to the factory to make orange juice.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

electricity – job – information – library – librarian (الدقهلية- 2024)

I'm Sherifa. I like books very much. I'm a (1) .... I work in a school (2) .... It's my (3) .... to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the (4) .... they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية- 2024)

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman; he works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then, in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer; he works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a guide; he explains history of the places that tourists visit.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who explains the history to tourists?

....

2. What does a farmer do?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
   ⓐ farmers ⓑ fishermen ⓒ guides ⓓ jobs
4. A .... goes out on his boat and catches fish.
   ⓐ farmer ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ teacher

➲ Punctate the following:

1. what do librarians do

....

2. i work in the tourism industry (القاهرة- 2024)

....

(2) Lesson two

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We can make .... from energy sources.
   ⓐ shoes ⓑ videos ⓒ electricity ⓓ fun
2. .... energy is a renewable energy source that comes from the sun.
   ⓐ Oil ⓑ Solar ⓒ Wind ⓓ Gas
3. .... energy is clean.
   ⓐ Coal ⓑ Gas ⓒ Oil ⓓ Solar
4. I like looking .... of the window.
   ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ out ⓓ on
5. .... sources can grow again or never run out.
   ⓐ Renewable ⓑ Non-renewable ⓒ Wrong ⓓ Right
6. Mango is my favorite ....
   ⓐ food ⓑ place ⓒ vegetable ⓓ fruit

7. We get wood from ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ houses ⓒ trees ⓓ money
8. Coal and oil are .... energy sources.
ⓐ renewable ⓑ non-renewable ⓒ new ⓓ old
9. The chair is made of ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ wood ⓒ oil ⓓ coal
10. They cut .... the tree yesterday.
ⓐ down ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ at

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

wind – play – use – electricity – sources (الاسكندرية- 2024)

Renewable energy **(1)** .... are everywhere. Wave, solar, and **(2)** .... energy are renewable energy sources. We can use these sources to make **(3)** .... There are many things today that **(4)** .... electricity.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ali and Waleed are brothers. Each brother had a beautiful orange tree next to his house. The brothers ate beautiful oranges and their children played under the trees. One day, Waleed decided to sell his tree because he needed money. He cut the wood and sold it. Waleed was happy. Next year, Ali's orange tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Ali more oranges. Waleed looked out of the window. There was no orange tree. He had no oranges and no more wood. Ali helped Waleed plant an orange seed to grow into a big tree.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Waleed decide to cut down his orange tree?

....

2. How did Ali help Waleed?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali and Waleed are ....
ⓐ sisters ⓑ friends ⓒ classmates ⓓ brothers
4. Each brother had a beautiful .... tree next to his house
ⓐ orange ⓑ banana ⓒ mango ⓓ strawberry

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger

....

2. would you cut the mango tree (الجيزة- 2024)

....

(3) Lesson three

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The old .... sells fresh fish.
ⓐ mom ⓑ grandpa ⓒ mechanic ⓓ fisherman
2. The old man .... around the village in an old van.
ⓐ walks ⓑ shouts ⓒ drives ⓓ swims
3. I was .... when I couldn't find my book.
ⓐ happy ⓑ disappointed ⓒ excited ⓓ interested
4. Grandpa was a .... He could fix cars.
ⓐ farmer ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ mechanic
5. The old man was .... when my mom fixed the engine.
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ sad ⓒ worried ⓓ surprised
6. I can't start the van. The .... doesn't work.
ⓐ fish ⓑ engine ⓒ job ⓓ village

7. Nour .... ice cream. She never eats it.
ⓐ likes ⓑ dislikes ⓒ disagrees ⓓ disobeys
8. Where is my cat? It .... somewhere.
ⓐ disappeared ⓑ disagreed ⓒ disliked ⓓ disappointed
9. A: I think pizza is the best food ever. B: No, I .... with you.
ⓐ agree ⓑ dislike ⓒ disagree ⓓ obey
10. Manal was sorry because she .... her teacher.
ⓐ obeyed ⓑ liked ⓒ agreed ⓓ disobeyed

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. We shouldn't .... (obey) our parents.
2. Hossam .... (likes) fish. He never eats it.
3. Ola was .... (appointed) when she lost the race.
4. The two sisters always .... (agree). They never agree.
5. My keys .... (appeared). Can you help me find them?

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

village – surprised – disappointed – engine – fish (جيزة- 2024)

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove around the (1) .... in an old van. He sold fresh (2) .... Everyone liked his fresh fish. One day, he was (3) .... because he couldn't start the van. Mom fixed the (4) .... and helped the old man.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

There was an old fisherman who liked his job. He drove around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My grandpa saw the man. It was hot in the sun. he wanted to help. He looked at the old van's engine. It was a very **simple** problem. he fixed the engine. The fisherman was surprised and happy. He gave my grandpa ten fresh fish.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who fixed the van?

....

2. Why was the fisherman happy at the end?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The fisherman was .... because he couldn't start his van
ⓐ sad ⓑ surprised ⓒ happy ⓓ fresh
4. The underlined word "simple" means ....
ⓐ hard ⓑ big ⓒ easy ⓓ young

➲ Punctate the following:

1. it's a very simple problem

....

2. The fisherman couldnt start his van (الشرقية- 2024)

....

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's hard work, but it's ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ exciting ⓒ boring ⓓ difficult
2. For teachers, every day is ....
ⓐ boring ⓑ similar ⓒ the same ⓓ different
3. A good teacher can change students' ....
ⓐ books ⓑ lives ⓒ trash ⓓ questions

4. Good teachers need to .... their students.
ⓐ know ⓑ learn ⓒ encourage ⓓ think
5. Teachers need to think ....
ⓐ slowly ⓑ quickly ⓒ nearly ⓓ hardly
6. A good teacher should be very ....
ⓐ surprising ⓑ different ⓒ exciting ⓓ patient
7. We should show .... to people around us.
ⓐ teachers ⓑ students ⓒ questions ⓓ respect
8. I respect the cleaner. I don't .... trash.
ⓐ eat ⓑ throw ⓒ buy ⓓ sell
9. I say thank you to the .... when I get off the bus.
ⓐ bus driver ⓑ librarian ⓒ teacher ⓓ cleaner
10. I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the ....
ⓐ bag ⓑ bus ⓒ shelf ⓓ school

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

(القاهرة- 2024)

change – surprising – easy – patient – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask **(1)** .... questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to **(2)** .... their students. They need to be very **(3)** .... They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can **(4)** .... their students' lives.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيزة- 2024)

We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people. I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the dentist. I listen to his/her advice.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How do we show respect to the teacher?

....

2. Is it important to show respect to the people around us?

....

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ dentist ⓑ teacher ⓒ respect ⓓ cleaner
4. We .... respect to the bus driver.
ⓐ eat ⓑ hop ⓒ show ⓓ jump

➲ Punctate the following:

1. i listen to my teacher carefully

....

2. what job do you want to have (الاسكندرية- 2024)

....

(1) Unit one "I feel good"

(1) Lesson one "food and drinks"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The food looks .... I like it.
ⓐ bad ⓑ cold ⓒ delicious ⓓ dirty

2. Let's .... our lunch.
ⓐ eats ⓑ eat ⓒ eating ⓓ ate

3. Egyptians farmers .... rice in Egypt.
ⓐ raise ⓑ grow ⓒ think ⓓ play

4. Farmers grow many fruits like ....
ⓐ mangoes ⓑ beans ⓒ carrots ⓓ rice

5. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and .... in Egypt.
ⓐ grapes ⓑ onions ⓒ watermelon ⓓ mangoes

6. Egyptian farmers .... many things you can see on this table.
ⓐ think ⓑ raise ⓒ produce ⓓ look

7. Farmers .... chickens in Egypt.
ⓐ grow ⓑ raise ⓒ make ⓓ plant

8. We .... rice in Egypt.
ⓐ raise ⓑ grow ⓒ think ⓓ look

9. Apples and .... are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ mangoes ⓑ rice ⓒ onions ⓓ potatoes

10. I eat chicken and rice for ....
ⓐ dinner ⓑ breakfast ⓒ lunch ⓓ snack

11. Egyptian .... produce many foods for us.
ⓐ farmers ⓑ doctors ⓒ teachers ⓓ nurses

12. Habiba always drinks .... in the morning. It's healthy.
ⓐ onions ⓑ potatoes ⓒ animals ⓓ milk

13. I like .... very much. We make sugar out of it. (المنوفية - 2022)
ⓐ onions ⓑ watermelon ⓒ sugarcane ⓓ chickens

14. I eat .... in the morning. (اسكندرية - 2024)
ⓐ breakfast ⓑ lunch ⓒ dinner ⓓ juice

15. Mangoes and .... are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ onions ⓑ bananas ⓒ rice ⓓ potatoes

16. We grow .... in Egypt. (المنوفية - 2022)
ⓐ bike ⓑ rice ⓒ car ⓓ bus

17. Farmers grow rice and .... They help us eat good food. (الغربية - 2022)
ⓐ potatoes ⓑ chairs ⓒ chickens ⓓ animals

18. Mom cooks special food for us. Yum! It looks ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ delicious ⓓ cold

19. We made chips from ....
ⓐ bananas ⓑ mangoes ⓒ potatoes ⓓ tomatoes

20. I drink a glass of ………… for breakfast.
ⓐ onions ⓑ bananas ⓒ milk ⓓ rice

21. We …………… chickens to get fresh eggs.
ⓐ raise ⓑ read ⓒ look ⓓ grow

22. Watermelon and ………….. are my favorite fruits.
ⓐ onions ⓑ grapes ⓒ potatoes ⓓ rice

23. ………….. grow vegetables for us to eat.
ⓐ Engineers ⓑ Farmers ⓒ Doctors ⓓ Vets

24. Breakfast is my favourite ………….. .
ⓐ job ⓑ meal ⓒ clothes ⓓ place

25. Orange juice is my favourite ……………… .
ⓐ book ⓑ sport ⓒ food ⓓ drink

26. ……………. and mangoes are my favourite fruits.
ⓐ Watermelon ⓑ Rice ⓒ Milk ⓓ Onions

27. He is a farmer. He ………… rice on his farm.
ⓐ raises ⓑ grows ⓒ comes ⓓ drinks

28. Farmers …………… many vegetables every year.
ⓐ happen ⓑ practice ⓒ talk ⓓ produce

29. Domiati cheese is very ……………. .
ⓐ tall ⓑ wrong ⓒ famous ⓓ sad

30. Our houses is so old. We need to ……………. it. (اسكندرية - 2024)
ⓐ repaint ⓑ recook ⓒ reread ⓓ rewrite

31. ………….. are kinds of vegetables.
ⓐ Oranges ⓑ Tomatoes ⓒ Apples ⓓ Grapes

32. Lunch is ……………. mom made some special food for us.
ⓐ ready ⓑ dirty ⓒ hungry ⓓ happy

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

raise – grow – produce – shoot – country (الدقهلية - 2024)

lots of the food we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers (1) **grow** rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers (2) **raise** chickens, sheep, cows, goats, and many other animals. Farmers (3) **produce** many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great (4) **country** .

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the time we sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Kareem's family live?

They live in Ismailia.

2. Why does Kareem like lunch?

Because all the time they sit together to eat and talk.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We have ………… meals every day.
ⓐ two ⓑ one ⓒ four ⓓ three

4. We are having potatoes and chicken for ………….. today.
ⓐ breakfast ⓑ lunch ⓒ dinner ⓓ break

➲ Punctate the following:

1. egyptian farmers produce many things

Egyptian farmers produce many things.

2. i made special food for us

I made special food for us.

3. we grow rice in egypt.

We grow rice in Egypt.

(2) Lesson two "I'm healthy"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Fruits are .... and healthy.
   ⓐ salty ⓑ sweet ⓒ bad ⓓ busy
2. He is a/an .... He is doing some research about plants.
   ⓐ teacher ⓑ engineer ⓒ scientist ⓓ guide
3. Mom uses bananas and milk to make delicious bananas ....
   ⓐ milkshake ⓑ tea ⓒ burgers ⓓ soup
4. I don't drink cola because it is ....
   ⓐ healthy ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ good ⓓ delicious
5. My dad is a/an .... and he likes looking at plants and animals.
   ⓐ teacher ⓑ basketball player ⓒ scientist ⓓ interviewer
6. I don't eat .... It's unhealthy.
   ⓐ fruits ⓑ candy ⓒ bananas ⓓ vegetables
7. She's an active player. She .... three times a week.
   ⓐ walks ⓑ goes ⓒ practices ⓓ makes
8. Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is ....
   ⓐ healthy ⓑ scary ⓒ tired ⓓ unhealthy
9. I think I'm .... I like to play basketball.
   ⓐ bad ⓑ sick ⓒ healthy ⓓ unhealthy

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. I want to play football, **but** .... **(and)** my leg hurts.
2. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes **and** .... **(but)** potatoes in Egypt.
3. I like burgers, **but** .... **(and)** I only eat one a week.
4. I like to play football **and** .... **(but)** tennis.
5. I don't eat candy, **but** .... **(and)** I eat fruit.
6. He can speak English **and** .... **(or)** Arabic.
7. I eat vegetables **and** .... **(but)** I exercise.
8. I want to play football, **but** .... **(and)** I'm ill.
9. I practice basketball **and** .... **(but)** football.
10. I like chocolate **and** .... **(but)** ice cream.
11. Nabil speaks English, **but** .... **(and)** he can't speak Chinese.
12. I want to go swimming, **but** .... **(and)** it is raining.
13. After school, I do my homework **and** .... **(because)** I eat dinner.
14. I practice basketball **and** .... **(or)** I walk home from school every day.
15. I don't drink cola, **but** .... **(or)** I drink fresh juice.
16. I want to be healthy, **but** .... **(and)** I don't like to eat vegetables.
17. Cats are cute **and** .... **(but)** quiet.
18. I like reading stories **and** .... **(but)** I like watching films, too.
19. Your cat is small, **but** .... **(so)** my cat is big.
20. She is a tour guide **and** .... **(but)** she likes reading about museums.
21. I can speak English **and** .... **(or)** French.
22. We wash the potatoes **and** .... **(but)** cut them into pieces.
23. I like chocolate ice cream, **but** .... **(or)** my sister likes vanilla.

24. Moaz has a car, **but**........ (and) he likes waking to his office.
25. I have one brother **and**........ (but) two sisters.
26. She wants to buy a car, **but**........ (and) she doesn't have enough money.
27. Mona sleeps early **and**........ (but) wakes up early every day.
28. Mazen is a good player, **but**........ (and) he needs to practice more.
29. They don't eat candy **and**........ (but) they don't like cola.
30. I studied hard, **but**........ (and) I didn't pass the exam.
31. She loves pizza, **but**........ (and) she doesn't eat it.
32. The kids drink water **and**........ (but) do a lot of sports at school.
33. My brother likes running, **but**........ (and) he doesn't like swimming.
34. My mom likes reading **and**........ (but) writing short stories.
35. I like oranges **and**........ (but) bananas.
36. I want to eat pizza, **but**........ (or) it isn't healthy.
37. I like playing tennis **but**........ (and) I can't play well.
38. Milk is healthy **but**........ (or) cola is unhealthy.
39. I want to plant a flower, **but**........ (and) I don't have seeds.
40. I have candy **and**........ (but) cola.
41. Let's **have**........ (having) our breakfast.
42. I eat chicken **but**........ (and) I eat fish.
43. He wants to play tennis **but**........ (and) he is busy.
44. The horse is **shorter**........ (short) than a camel. (الشرقية - 2024)
45. I play tennis **and**........ (but) football. (الإسماعيلية - 2024)
46. She likes to play football, **but**........ (and) she can't play it. (الشرقية - 2024)

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. i do a lot of sports at school

I do a lot of sports at school.

2. my mom makes a delicious cake

My mom makes a delicious cake.

(3) Lesson three "The empty pot"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....
   ⓐ desert ⓑ garden ⓒ school ⓓ palace
2. We .... our homework yesterday.
   ⓐ recycled ⓑ redid ⓒ repainted ⓓ recleaned
3. A/An .... is someone who looks after gardens.
   ⓐ scientist ⓑ emperor ⓒ gardener ⓓ king
4. We put the .... in the pot to grow.
   ⓐ seeds ⓑ water ⓒ food ⓓ candy
5. My friend is kind and ....
   ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ bad ⓓ unhealthy
6. Someone who is ...., does not lie.
   ⓐ beautiful ⓑ ugly ⓒ honest ⓓ happy
7. This plant is .... because it doesn't grow.
   ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ empty ⓓ good
10. My brother will try to win in the ....
   ⓐ competition ⓑ station ⓒ transportation ⓓ seed
11. The .... keeps the garden clean.
   ⓐ vet ⓑ bus driver ⓒ gardener ⓓ electrician

12. He is from .... He is Chinese.
ⓐ China ⓑ Egypt ⓒ Italy ⓓ France
13. The boy was very sad because he .... the game.
ⓐ asked ⓑ won ⓒ tried ⓓ lost
14. When the seed is ...., it cannot grow.
ⓐ good ⓑ dead ⓒ green ⓓ hard
15. Omar is really .... He never lies.
ⓐ honest ⓑ important ⓒ hard ⓓ dead
16. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
ⓐ farmer ⓑ plumber ⓒ king ⓓ gardener
17. My friend is kind and ....
ⓐ dead ⓑ honest ⓒ bad ⓓ unhealthy
18. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....
ⓐ desert ⓑ garden ⓒ school ⓓ palace
19. Cheng was good at looking .... his garden.
ⓐ at ⓑ for ⓒ after ⓓ from
20. An honest person doesn't ....
ⓐ talk ⓑ lie ⓒ work ⓓ win

➲ Punctate the following:

1. eman lived in China.

Eman lived in China.

2. cheng was very good at growing things

Cheng was very good at growing things.

(4.5) Lesson four and five "Writing"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Damietta is an Egyptian ....
ⓐ street ⓑ village ⓒ governorate ⓓ beach
2. The land in Damietta is rich in ....
ⓐ stars ⓑ birds ⓒ fish ⓓ nutrients
3. Domiate .... is very famous.
ⓐ cheese ⓑ sheep ⓒ chicken ⓓ chips
4. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
ⓐ Fishermen ⓑ Farmers ⓒ Teachers ⓓ Mechanics
5. We need to grow .... to make bread.
ⓐ lemons ⓑ potatoes ⓒ wheat ⓓ guava
6. My favourite fruit are .... and grapes.
ⓐ wheat ⓑ rice ⓒ guavas ⓓ milk
7. Fruits are healthy. They're rich in ....
ⓐ salt ⓑ nutrients ⓒ leaves ⓓ money
8. .... and sheep are animals we find on the farm.
ⓐ Elephants ⓑ Fish ⓒ Goats ⓓ Lions
9. About 1.5 million Egyptians live in Damietta ....
ⓐ governorate ⓑ town ⓒ village ⓓ country
10. .... in Damietta grow wheat, lemons, and grapes.
ⓐ Farmers ⓑ Animals ⓒ Fishermen ⓓ Fish
11. Fruits are .... in vitamins.
ⓐ poor ⓑ weak ⓒ rich ⓓ expensive
12. Cows, goats, and .... are animals that live in Damietta, too.
ⓐ wheat ⓑ sheep ⓒ rice ⓓ lemons

13. Farmers in Damietta grow many kinds of fruits like grapes and ....
ⓐ rice ⓑ wheat ⓒ guavas ⓓ cheese
14. Crops need a .... that is rich in nutrients to grow well.
ⓐ sea ⓑ governorate ⓒ farmer ⓓ land
15. Fishermen use .... catch fish.
ⓐ hotels ⓑ trees ⓒ nets ⓓ animals
16. Life is .... in Damietta. Many people live happily there.
ⓐ bad ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ good ⓓ difficult

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية - 2022)

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do farmers raise?

They raise chickens.

2. Summarize the text in two sentence?

Omar's Life.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Farmers grow fruits and ....
ⓐ cheese ⓑ chicken ⓒ vegetables ⓓ villages
4. Omar lives in a small ....
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ town ⓓ desert

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Life is good in Damietta.

Life is good in Damietta.

2. What do farmers grow in damietta (بورسعيد - 2024)

What do farmers grow in Damietta?

(2) Unit two "Desert animals"

(1) Lesson one "Animals in desert"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The camel lives in the ....
ⓐ sea ⓑ sky ⓒ river ⓓ desert
2. Crocodiles are huge and ....
ⓐ cute ⓑ scary ⓒ small ⓓ young
3. Spiders are .... They eat insects.
ⓐ tall ⓑ funny ⓒ huge ⓓ helpful
4. It is .... to swim here. There are crocodiles.
ⓐ dangerous ⓑ cute ⓒ huge ⓓ ugly
5. The .... is a big animal.
ⓐ ant ⓑ bee ⓒ camel ⓓ spider
6. .... are huge and scary. They have sharp teeth.
ⓐ Birds ⓑ Insects ⓒ Lizards ⓓ Crocodiles
7. Both camels and .... live in the desert.
ⓐ crocodiles ⓑ fennec foxes ⓒ ducks ⓓ fish
8. .... don't have any legs, but they can move fast.
ⓐ Camels ⓑ Insects ⓒ Birds ⓓ Snakes

9. Different kinds of ………….. can fly.
ⓐ lizards ⓑ Snakes ⓒ birds ⓓ camels
10. ……………. eat insect and farmers like them.
ⓐ Crocodiles ⓑ Snakes ⓒ Camels ⓓ Spiders
11. ……………. are smaller than birds.
ⓐ Foxes ⓑ Crocodiles ⓒ Insects ⓓ Camels
12. The snake is very ……………. . I don't like it.
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ scary ⓒ cute ⓓ helpful
13. Egypt is a ………….. .
ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ sea ⓓ country
14. The fennec fox has thick ……………… . (القليوبية - 2024)
ⓐ far ⓑ fur ⓒ for ⓓ fat
15. Camels can live without ……………. for a long time. (المنوفية - 2024)
ⓐ clothes ⓑ water ⓒ fur ⓓ feet
16. Look at those beautiful …………… flying in the sky.
ⓐ camels ⓑ crocodiles ⓒ birds ⓓ lizards
17. Spiders eat ……………. .
ⓐ insects ⓑ camels ⓒ birds ⓓ snakes
18. There are many animal that …………… in our country.
ⓐ live ⓑ need ⓒ think ⓓ play
19. Adam always helps his friends. He is very ……………. .
ⓐ help ⓑ helpless ⓒ helpful ⓓ bad
20. ……………. are very dangerous.
ⓐ Camels ⓑ Fish ⓒ Birds ⓓ Crocodiles
21. The …………… is a small type of foxes that live in the desert.
ⓐ bird ⓑ camel ⓒ fennec fox ⓓ snake
22. ……………. live in the deserts.
ⓐ Bears ⓑ Camels ⓒ Dolphins ⓓ Fish
23. Camels are perfect for the ……………. .
ⓐ sea ⓑ river ⓒ lake ⓓ desert

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

job – scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They do a very important (1) **job** . They eat (2) **insects** ,birds and lizards. This (3) **controls** the number of these small animal . We sometimes think some animals are (4) **scary** or ugly, but they are all important.

huge – spiders – agree – snake – farmers

Last week, I visited the zoo with my parents. We saw many different animals there. The crocodile was (1) **huge** . The (2) **snakes** was scary. We saw many (3) **spiders** . My sister thought spiders were ugly! Mom told us (4) **farmers** like spiders because they eat insects.

helpful – important – huge – animals – food

In our country, there are many (1) **animals** There are crocodiles. They're (2) **huge** and scary. There are also spiders. Spiders are very (3) **helpful** They eat insects. Animals are all (4) **important** .

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tarek and Sara's favorite subject at school is science. This week, they are studying animals that live in Egypt. Camels and fennec foxes are animals that live in the desert. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they control the number of small animals. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful. They eat small insects. That's why farmers like them. All animals are important.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do snakes and crocodiles do?

They control the number of small animals.

2. Why do farmers like spiders?

Because they eat small insects.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
   ⓐ spiders and farmers ⓑ Tarek and Sara ⓒ animals in Egypt ⓓ science lessons
4. Camels and .... are animals that live in the desert.
   ⓐ spiders ⓑ fennec foxes ⓒ crocodiles ⓓ insects

Punctate the following:

1. farmers like spiders

Farmers like spiders.

2. They eat insects birds, and lizards

They eat insects, birds, and lizards.

Punctate the following:

1. snakes are scary animals (الدقهلية - 2024)

Snakes are scary animals.

(2) Lesson two "Amazing desert animals"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Camels have flat ....
   ⓐ teeth ⓑ legs ⓒ feet ⓓ humps
2. Camels are .... and beautiful.
   ⓐ careful ⓑ flat ⓒ amazing ⓓ delicious
3. Camels are .... for the desert.
   ⓐ sad ⓑ perfect ⓒ bad ⓓ large
4. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.
   ⓐ meat ⓑ grass ⓒ sand ⓓ fish
5. We use .... to make clothes.
   ⓐ fur ⓑ eyes ⓒ humps ⓓ hair
6. Mom made a .... cake for my birthday.
   ⓐ strong ⓑ special ⓒ noisy ⓓ angry
7. Camels carry things and people to cross the ....
   ⓐ sea ⓑ lake ⓒ river ⓓ desert
8. We can get delicious .... from camels.
   ⓐ fur ⓑ cake ⓒ eggs ⓓ milk
9. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the .... from coming in.
   ⓐ air ⓑ sand ⓒ water ⓓ light
10. Can you help me .... the street, please ?
    ⓐ live ⓑ carry ⓒ stop ⓓ cross
11. **A:** How .... is a horse? **B:** It is about 459 kg. (المنوفية - 2022)
    ⓐ fast ⓑ tall ⓒ heavy ⓓ long
12. Camels can live without .... for a long time.
    ⓐ grass ⓑ water ⓒ air ⓓ sleep
13. We can use camels' fur to make .... !
    ⓐ bags ⓑ clothes ⓒ hats ⓓ shoes

14. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't .... in sand.
ⓐ eat ⓑ drink ⓒ fly ⓓ sink

15. I saw a/an .... movie with my family . I like it.
ⓐ bad ⓑ boring ⓒ amazing ⓓ heavy

16. How .... is the horse? - It is 88 kph.
ⓐ fast ⓑ long ⓒ heavy ⓓ old

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. The blue car is **faster** (fast) than the red one.
2. Apples are **healthier** (healthy) than candies.
3. Elephants are heavier **than** (that) giraffes.
4. The city is **noisier** (noisy) than the countryside.
5. Pizza is **more** (as) delicious than a fish.
6. The fennec fox is **smaller** (small) than other foxes.
7. A crocodile is **more** (most) dangerous than a fish.
8. How **tall** (heavy) is the horse? - It's about 1.4 - 1.8 meters tall.
9. How **heavy** (fast) is the horse ? - It is about 450 kg.
10. A turtle is **slower** (slow) than a rabbit.
11. Math is **more** (most) difficult than science.
12. The cat is **heavier** (heavy) than the mouse.
13. A snake is **more** (much) dangerous than a dog.
14. How **long** (fast) does the camel live ? - 40 years.
15. The park is **busier** (busy) during summer than winter.
16. The red flower is **more beautiful** (beautiful) than the yellow one.
17. The camel is stronger **than** (then) the horse.
18. Sami is **taller** (tall) than his sister.
19. Horses are **more** (most) beautiful than fennec foxes.
20. The school is bigger, **than** (then) the house.
21. I think the cat **nicer** (nice) then the dog. (2024 - القاهرة)
22. Ola's dress is **more** (most) colorful than my dress .
23. Nadia is more active **than** (that) Heba.
24. Marwa thinks that fennec foxes are **cuter** (cute) than crocodiles.
25. A crocodile is **bigger** (big) than a dog. (2024 -اسكندرية)
26. Cars are **more** (most) expensive than bikes.
27. The tiger is **faster** (fast) than all other animals.
1. The lion is **more dangerous** (dangerous) than the giraffe.
2. The bear is stronger **than** (then) the pelican. (2024 -المنوفية)
3. The cell phone is **smaller** (small) than the laptop.
4. The car is **faster** (fast) than the bike.
5. The new house is **nicer** (nice) than the old one.
6. My cousin is **older** (old) than me.
7. My new car is **more expensive** (expensive) than yours.
8. I think math is easier **than** (then) science.
28. Camels live **longer** (long) than horses.

➲ Punctate the following:

1. camels are more beautiful than horses (2024 -القاهرة)

Camels are more beautiful than horses.

2. What s in a camel's hump

What's in a camel's hump?

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

live – grass – faster – eyes – look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. They have large, beautiful (1) **eyes** .... They can live in the desert, but they need people to (2) **look** .... after them. Horses can (3) **live** .... for 25 - 30 years. They're (4) **faster** .... than camels, but camels can live longer than horses.

❷

fresh – teeth – grass – play – animal

I like animals. My favorite (1) **animal** .... is the horse. I like riding on their backs. Horses have strong (2) **teeth** .... They have large beautiful eyes. They like to eat (3) **grass** .... They drink (4) **fresh** .... water.

(3) Lesson three "The pelican and the bear"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Bears have sharp ....
   ⓐ claws ⓑ tails ⓒ noses ⓓ fur
2. I feel .... I want something to eat.
   ⓐ sad ⓑ thirsty ⓒ hungry ⓓ angry
3. She's .... of animals, so she doesn't like to touch them.
   ⓐ happy ⓑ scared ⓒ kind ⓓ strong
4. The .... is a large animal that has paws and sharp claws.
   ⓐ pelican ⓑ bear ⓒ pear ⓓ fish
5. A pelican and a bear are in the ....
   ⓐ sea ⓑ desert ⓒ pond ⓓ river
6. They are both looking at a big, juicy ....
   ⓐ meat ⓑ chicken ⓒ fish ⓓ fruit
7. A: How do you ...., pelican? B: I am hungry.
   ⓐ watch ⓑ feed ⓒ feel ⓓ fly
8. The bear lifted its .... to take the fish out of the water.
   ⓐ paw ⓑ beak ⓒ head ⓓ ears
9. The .... is a big white bird that has a long beak.
   ⓐ fish ⓑ bee ⓒ pelican ⓓ bear
10. The bear is bigger and .... than the pelican.
   ⓐ smaller ⓑ stronger ⓒ weaker ⓓ thinner
11. The pelican uses its .... to catch fish.
   ⓐ beak ⓑ paw ⓒ hair ⓓ neck
12. A pelican opens its .... to catch the fish. (الدقهلية- 2024)
   ⓐ claw ⓑ beak ⓒ hand ⓓ paw
13. A pelican has a .... to eat with.
   ⓐ wing ⓑ tail ⓒ beak ⓓ paw

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

Beak – paw – juicy – water – lifts

A pelican and a bear are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, (1) **juicy** .... fish. The bear (2) **lifts** .... its paw. The pelican opens its (3) **beak** .... It is ready to take the fish out of (4) **water** ....

paws – scary – eat – bears – sky

I'm soha. I love animals. My favorite animals are (1) **bears** .... Bears have strong (2) **paws** and sharp claws. They also have sharp teeth . They are (3) **scary** .... animals. They (4) **eat** fish.

paw – looking – stronger – beak – water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are (1) **looking** at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) **paw** The pelican opens its (3) **beak** . It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is (4) **stronger** than the pelican.

➲ **Punctate the following:**

1. Where s my fish

Where's my fish?

2. i m bigger and stronger than you

I'm bigger and stronger than you.

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➲ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The fennec .... is smaller than other foxes.
   ⓐ gazelle ⓑ camel ⓒ crocodile ⓓ fox
2. Rhim gazelles live in the ....
   ⓐ forest ⓑ North Africa ⓒ Sahara Desert ⓓ sea
3. They walk around looking for grass and .... to eat.
   ⓐ leaves ⓑ worms ⓒ birds ⓓ insects
4. The rhim gazelles yellow-white .... protects them from the sun.
   ⓐ feet ⓑ horns ⓒ coat ⓓ head
5. Both rhim gazelles and fennec fox live in the ....
   ⓐ rivers ⓑ desert ⓒ mountains ⓓ farms
6. The fennec fox has thick .... It helps the fennec fox stay warm.
   ⓐ beak ⓑ feather ⓒ fur ⓓ wing
7. The rhim gazelle have long ....
   ⓐ horns ⓑ wings ⓒ feathers ⓓ beaks
8. The fennec fox has .... ears.
   ⓐ big ⓑ small ⓒ little ⓓ tiny
9. Rhim gazelles eat grass, ... , and plants.
   ⓐ fish ⓑ leaves ⓒ mice ⓓ insects
10. A: How .... is a fennec fox? B: It weighs around 1 kilogram.
   ⓐ heavy ⓑ long ⓒ tall ⓓ old
11. The .... eats insects, lizards, and small mica.
   ⓐ camel ⓑ rhim gazelle ⓒ pelican ⓓ fennec fox
12. The fennec fox loses .... from its ears when it is hot in the desert.
   ⓐ fur ⓑ food ⓒ water ⓓ heat
13. It's very .... in the desert. (الدقهلية - 2024)
   ⓐ tall ⓑ hot ⓒ long ⓓ slow

➲ **Read and complete the text with the words:**

❶

sun – beautiful – live – grass – camels

There are lots of desert animals and the rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very (1) **beautiful** . They eat (2) **grass** , leaves and plants. They don't need to drink a lot of water like (3) **camels** . They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the (4) **sun**

❷

desert – kilogram – lizards – ears – heat

The fennec fox is the smallest of all the world's foxes. It is called desert fox. It lives in the (1) **desert** of North Africa. It weighs only one (2) **kilogram** . It has big (3) **ears** . It eats (4) **lizards** and insects.

❸

heat – horns – insects – foxes – fur

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other (1) **foxes** Its ears are big, really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear (2) **insects** and small animals. During the day, it is hot in desert. The fennec fox loses (3) **heat** from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick (4) **fur** keep it warm.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الفيوم – إدارة إطسا التعليمية - 2024)

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do rhim gazelles live?

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert.

2. Summarize the text in two sentence.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Rhim gazelles eat ....
ⓐ meat ⓑ leaves ⓒ small animals ⓓ insects

4. Rhim gazelles have .... horns.
ⓐ short ⓑ small ⓒ long ⓓ big

➲ Punctate the following:

1. does a fennec fox live in Egypt

Does a fennec fox live in Egypt?

2. how heavy is a rhim gazelle

How heavy is a rhim gazelle?

3. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North africa

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.

(3) Unit three "Why do we grow plant"

(1) Lesson one "plants and seeds"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We .... mango trees in our garden.
ⓐ shout ⓑ swim ⓒ kill ⓓ grow

2. The farmer .... the crops to help them grow.
ⓐ waters ⓑ reads ⓒ writes ⓓ speaks

3. The sun helps the .... grow into plants.
ⓐ boats ⓑ chairs ⓒ seeds ⓓ desk

4. We need good .... to grow good plants.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ books ⓒ bags ⓓ pens

5. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called ....
ⓐ information ⓑ fraction ⓒ germination ⓓ cutting

6. The .... grows above the soil.
ⓐ water ⓑ soil ⓒ shoot ⓓ root

7. The green .... of the plants are amazing.
ⓐ claws ⓑ leaves ⓒ beaks ⓓ candies

8. We grow white flowers on the .... in our apartment.
ⓐ zoo ⓑ balcony ⓒ park ⓓ museum

9. Put the seed in the .... and water it.
ⓐ soil ⓑ fridge ⓒ shoot ⓓ air

10. .... grow under the soil. (الاسماعيلية- 2024)
ⓐ Shoots ⓑ Flowers ⓒ Roots ⓓ Leaves

11. Watermelons have black .... inside.
ⓐ seeds ⓑ leaves ⓒ roots ⓓ flowers

12. Plants need .... and water to grow.
ⓐ fruits ⓑ sunlight ⓒ sugar ⓓ flowers

13. We need .... and water to grow plants.
ⓐ fruits ⓑ leaves ⓒ soil ⓓ balcony

14. To grow a plant, you need to put a .... in the soil.
ⓐ leave ⓑ seed ⓒ shoot ⓓ root

15. I .... the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
ⓐ play ⓑ eat ⓒ sleep ⓓ water

16. I have a big .... in my house.
ⓐ seed ⓑ root ⓒ soil ⓓ balcony

17. We .... a seed, and it grows.
ⓐ plant ⓑ come ⓒ take ⓓ become

18. The .... is the part of the plant that grows taller above the soil.
ⓐ seed ⓑ root ⓒ shoot ⓓ fruit

19. Tomato have seeds ....
ⓐ upside ⓑ inside ⓒ outside ⓓ beside

20. Tomatoes are .... before they are red. (البحيرة- 2024)
ⓐ red ⓑ blue ⓒ white ⓓ green

21. You need to wait for the tomato .... to be fruits to eat them.
ⓐ shoots ⓑ leaves ⓒ flowers ⓓ seeds

22. When the shoot grows taller above the soil, it usually has green ....
ⓐ soil ⓑ seeds ⓒ roots ⓓ leaves

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

grows – roots – leaves – sunlight – red

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1) **sunlight** and water, so it can grow. The seed grows (2) **roots** under the soil. Then it (3) **grows** a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows (4) **leaves** and flowers. That is called germination.

❷

water – flowers – soil – roots – shoot (القاهرة- 2024)

We put a seed in the (1) **soil** . The seed needs sunlight and (2) **water** So it can grow. The seed grows (3) **roots** under the soil. Then, it grows a ashoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and (4) **flowers** .

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tomatoes are delicious and healthy. We use tomatoes in most of our food. We grow tomatoes on our balcony. Mom always takes fresh tomatoes and makes us delicious salad. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seed and grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence?

There are many steps to grow tomatoes.

2. What does mom use the fresh tomatoes for?

She uses them to make delicious salad.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text is about " .... plants "
ⓐ Guava ⓑ Tomato ⓒ Mango ⓓ peas

4. We should .... the plant every day to grow.
ⓐ ask ⓑ hurt ⓒ water ⓓ cut

We plant tomatoes on the balcony. We are happy to see the plants grow. They have fruits and flowers. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant growes. That is called the germination process. Our science teacher says plants need sunlight and water so that they can grow.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do tomatoes have inside ?

Tomatoes have seeds inside.

2. What is the germination process ?

We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant grows

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ farm ⓑ science ⓒ soil ⓓ germination

4. Plants need .... and water to grow.
ⓐ flowers ⓑ sunlight ⓒ science ⓓ fruits

➲ Punctate the following:

1. can you see the leaves and the flowers

Can you see the leaves and the flowers? .

2. that's awesome! I found a red tomato (الدقهلية- 2024)

That's awesome! I found a red tomato. .

(2) Lesson two "plants in Egypt"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An .... is a place where living things live and grow.
ⓐ habitat ⓑ office ⓒ first station ⓓ hospital

2. Lotus flowers grow near the .... They need a lot of water.
ⓐ desert ⓑ rocks ⓒ river ⓓ mountain

3. .... work in the agricultural habitat.
ⓐ Engineers ⓑ Farmers ⓒ Vets ⓓ Teachers

4. Acacia grows in the desert ....
ⓐ ice ⓑ hobby ⓒ habitat ⓓ room

5. Silver rings are expensive, but gold rings are the .... expensive rings.
ⓐ more ⓑ most ⓒ less ⓓ much

6. The daisy is the smallest flower and it lives the ....
ⓐ short ⓑ shortest ⓒ shorter ⓓ a short

7. Butterflies are the .... colorful insects.
ⓐ more ⓑ many ⓒ most ⓓ much

8. Acacia tree grows in .... habitat. It doesn't need a lot of water. (البحيرة- 2024)
ⓐ rivers ⓑ agricultural ⓒ desert ⓓ lakes

9. Farmer work in the .... habitat. They grow food for us to eat.
ⓐ desert ⓑ agricultural ⓒ river ⓓ lake

10. Both bean plants and .... grow in the agricultural habitat.
ⓐ reed ⓑ acacia ⓒ orange tree ⓓ tamarisk

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. My city is the **nicest** (nice) place to live.
2. I think the crocodile is the **scariest** (scarier) animal.
3. He is the **fastest** (faster) boy in our class.
4. My brother is **the** (then) strongest player in the team
5. Elephants are the **biggest** (bigger) animals.
6. Which animal is the **scariest** (scary) ?
7. The sunflower is the **heaviest** (heavy) .
8. The giraffe is the **tallest** (taller) land animal.
9. The Sahara Desert is the **hottest** (hot) desert.
10. I think pizza is the **most** (more) delicious food.
11. Soha is the **tallest** (tall) girl in the class.
12. What is the **smallest** (small) bird in the world ?
13. This mountain is the **highest** (higher) mountain in the world.
14. Marwan is the **smartest** (smart) boy in math.
15. What is the **most** (more) expensive bag in the shop ?
16. The blue whale is the **biggest** (bigger) animal.
17. My father is the **bravest** (brave) person in my family.
18. The turtle is **the** (than) slowest animal.
19. The elephant is the **heaviest** (heavier) land animal.
20. Hala's red dress is the **nicest** (nice) one.
21. Crocodiles and snakes are the **most** (more) dangerous animals.
22. A snake is the **scariest** (scary) animal.
23. Bikes are **slower** (slow) than cars.
24. The lion is the **most** (more) dangerous animal.
25. Roses live longer than daisies. But sunflowers live the **longest** (long).
26. Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the **most** (more) beautiful flowers.
27. Ali is the **kindest** (kind). He helps all his friends.
28. History books are the **most** (more) interesting books.
29. Noha is the **best** (good) student in the class.
30. My brother thinks math is **the worst** (bad) subject.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

❶

farmers – rivers – tamarisk – agricultural – habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the (1) **agricultural** habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near (2) **rivers** and lakes. Acacia and (3) **tamarisk** trees grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this (4) **habitat** don't need much water to grow.

❶

rain – seed – rivers – desert – farmers (الاسماعيلية- 2024)

In the agricultural habitat, (1) **farmers** grow food for us to eat. Plants near the (2) **rivers** and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the (3) **desert** don't need a lot of water. There isn't much (4) **rain** in the desert so we can find the acacia plant and tamarisk there.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Rivers and lakes are also plants habitats. Plants **near** the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. But in the desert habitat, plants don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert. Acacia plant and tamarisk grow in the desert.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What is a habitat ?

Habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

2. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes?

Lotus flowers and reed.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is about " .... " .
   ⓐ Plant habitats ⓑ Clothes ⓒ festivals ⓓ Houses

The underlined word **"near"** is the opposite of ....
   ⓐ far ⓑ close ⓒ behind ⓓ about

➲ Punctate the following:

1. how big is the flower

How big is the flower?

2. the sunflower is the heaviest flower

The sunflower is the heaviest flower.

3. how long does it live

How long does it live?

(3) Lesson three

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. .... air is very dangerous for our bodies.
   ⓐ Clean ⓑ Healthy ⓒ Polluted ⓓ Green
2. She .... fresh fruits at the market.
   ⓐ made ⓑ bought ⓒ changed ⓓ decided
3. They plant many crops and raise animals on the ....
   ⓐ tree ⓑ sunlight ⓒ air ⓓ farm
4. Someone who always helps people is ....
   ⓐ helpful ⓑ helpless ⓒ helpfully ⓓ help
5. Soha is .... and cute.
   ⓐ beautiful ⓑ beauty ⓒ more beauty ⓓ as beauty
6. These dresses are ....
   ⓐ color ⓑ colors ⓒ colorful ⓓ colorfully
7. She usually .... about her children.
   ⓐ careful ⓑ cares ⓒ carefully ⓓ careless
8. My sister likes the .... of nature.
   ⓐ beauty ⓑ beautiful ⓒ beautifully ⓓ more beautiful
9. When there is no water in the land, it becomes ....
   ⓐ wet ⓑ dry ⓒ good ⓓ fresh
10. They used .... to water the seeds.
   ⓐ rainwater ⓑ air ⓒ heat ⓓ sun
11. I don't like the .... air in the city.
   ⓐ clear ⓑ fresh ⓒ polluted ⓓ clean
12. He is .... of his parents. They did many useful things.
   ⓐ scared ⓑ afraid ⓒ full ⓓ proud
13. The air is polluted and it's noisy in the ....
   ⓐ farm ⓑ city ⓒ desert ⓓ village
14. Lucas's grandparents used rainwater to .... the seeds.
   ⓐ buy ⓑ bring ⓒ water ⓓ plant
15. A .... is a thousand million.
   ⓐ billion ⓑ hundred ⓒ thousand ⓓ hundred million

16. Mona is always .... when she crosses the road.
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ careful ⓒ colorful ⓓ useful

17. Nour had two .... of cake.
ⓐ slippers ⓑ swans ⓒ slices ⓓ switch

18. Use the .... to turn the lights on, please.
ⓐ slice ⓑ swan ⓒ sweet ⓓ switch

19. Nader helps his mother and .... the floor.
ⓐ sleeps ⓑ swims ⓒ sweeps ⓓ switch

20. Mom has a pair of blue .... She only wear them at home.
ⓐ switches ⓑ slippers ⓒ sweets ⓓ slices

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Salma is a **beautiful** (beauty) girl.
2. My brother likes **colorful** (colorfully) flowers.
3. Ali is a **careful** (care) driver. He drives carefully.
4. This book is **useful** (use) . I will read it again.
5. The flowers in the garden are very **beautiful** (beauty).
6. Be **careful** (care) when you cut the vegetables with a knife.
7. Shady is **helpful** (help) and kind to other people.
8. Noha likes wearing **colorful** (color) clothes.
9. Reading is very **useful** (use).
10. My dad uses some **useful** (use) tools to fix his car.
11. Be **careful** (care) when you use the knife.
12. Marwa has a **beautiful** (beauty) pink dress.
13. Parrots are **colorful** (color) birds. You can see them at the zoo.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

flowers – green – billion – proud – life

My grandparents had a farm. They had a good (1) **life** there. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a (2) **billion** liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) **green** . They planted trees and (4) **flowers** .

desert land – green – rainwater – life – seeds

Today, Lara lives on a special farm with her mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good (1) **life** . They plant millions of (3) **seeds** . to make the land green. They use billions of liters of (2) **rainwater** to plant the seeds. Lara knows it's important to turn the (4) **desert land** into farmland because it helps them get more crops.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds, They used rainwater to water the seed. **They** planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his parents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His parents are very proud of his grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

Adam's grandparents made the dry land into green.

2. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land?

The brought animals to the land.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. They planted millions of ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ flowers ⓒ festivals ⓓ farms

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's ....
ⓐ friends ⓑ parents ⓒ grandparents ⓓ sisters

➲ Punctate the following:

1. i live on a farm

I live on a farm.

2. who is lucas

Who is Lucas ?

3. He lives on a farm in the united states

He lives on a farm in the United States.

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The sunflower opens and .... the sun.
   ⓐ closes ⓑ faces ⓒ puts ⓓ drops
2. Baskets and sandals in Ancient Egypt were made from ....
   ⓐ glass ⓑ papyrus ⓒ cotton ⓓ water
3. The sunflower dies and the life .... begins again.
   ⓐ cycle ⓑ time ⓒ boat ⓓ style
4. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm .... to grow.
   ⓐ feather ⓑ stem ⓒ forest ⓓ weather
5. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make .... and baskets.
   ⓐ beds ⓑ clothes ⓒ sandals ⓓ walls
6. .... was famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
   ⓐ Tomato ⓑ Sunflower ⓒ papyrus ⓓ sandal
7. Papyrus needs a lot of water and .... weather to grow quickly.
   ⓐ hot ⓑ cold ⓒ warm ⓓ freezing
8. .... , you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.
   ⓐ First ⓑ After first ⓒ After ⓓ Finally
9. When the seed .... , it grows roots under the soil.
   ⓐ opens ⓑ germinates ⓒ faces ⓓ drops
10. You need to put the seed in the .... and water it to grow.
    ⓐ basket ⓑ river ⓒ sunlight ⓓ roots
11. .... a few weeks, the plant grows leaves and flowers.
    ⓐ Next ⓑ After ⓒ Finally ⓓ First
12. When the tomato plant dies, it .... its seeds.
    ⓐ grows ⓑ plants ⓒ germinates ⓓ drops
13. After about 4 months, the .... opens and faces the sun.
    ⓐ shoot ⓑ seed ⓒ root ⓓ sunflower
14. We need .... to grow plant.
    ⓐ seeds ⓑ trees ⓒ fruits ⓓ flower
15. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the ....
    ⓐ sea ⓑ beach ⓒ farm ⓓ river
16. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.
    ⓐ sunflowers ⓑ papyrus ⓒ reed ⓓ rose

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

useful – drink – grow – oil – yellow

A sunflower is a big flower. It's always (1) **yellow** in color. Sunflowers need a lot of sun to (2)**grow** . Sunflower seeds also have a lot of (3) **oil** in them and people use it for cooking a lot of kinds of foods such as rice, fried potatoes and onions. It's a very beautiful and (4)**useful** flower.

roots – sun – After that – germinates – months

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed (1)**germinates** and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2) **After that** , the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 (3)**months** , it opens and faces the (4) **sun** .

warm – sandals – famous – river – mountain

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1) **famous** because Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2)**sandals** and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3)**warm** weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the (4) **river** .

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing a lot of plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant .

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did papyrus grow ?

It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River.

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make ?

The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about " .... " .
   ⓐ Lotus ⓑ Rose ⓒ Papyrus ⓓ Tomatoes
4. Papyrus needs a lot of .... To grow.
   ⓐ sand ⓑ waves ⓒ water ⓓ paper

➲ Punctate the following:

1. why do farmers grow sunflowers

Why do farmers grow sunflowers?

2. Ancient egyptian used papyrus to make paper

Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper.

3. why do farmers grow sunflower

Why do farmers grow sunflower?

4. papyrus grow in the nile delta

Papyrus grow in the Nile Delta.

(4) Unit four "Where do you live"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I can see the whole street from the ....
   ⓐ balcony ⓑ bedroom ⓒ bathroom ⓓ kitchen
2. In the desert people live in ....
   ⓐ houseboats ⓑ balconies ⓒ apartments ⓓ tents
3. I sleep in a big .... It has two big beds.
   ⓐ bathroom ⓑ bedroom ⓒ living room ⓓ kitchen
4. I play computer games in the .... where there is a big TV.
   ⓐ kitchen ⓑ living room ⓒ bathroom ⓓ balcony
5. My mom cooks food in the ....
   ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ bathroom ⓓ living room
6. My friend lives on a .... She loves living on water.
   ⓐ tent ⓑ houseboat ⓒ garden ⓓ balcony

7. My aunt moved to a new .... last week. It's in a big building.
ⓐ tent ⓑ houseboat ⓒ house ⓓ room
8. You shouldn't play in the ....
ⓐ club ⓑ street ⓒ garden ⓓ park
9. The .... is the room where I eat dinner with my family.
ⓐ garden ⓑ bathroom ⓒ dining room ⓓ balcony
10. Omar likes watching television with his family in the ....
ⓐ living room ⓑ kitchen ⓒ tent ⓓ bathroom
11. He takes a shower in the ....
ⓐ living room ⓑ bedroom ⓒ bathroom ⓓ garden
12. My mother is making dinner in the ....
ⓐ houseboat ⓑ dining room ⓒ kitchen ⓓ balcony
13. You should .... your room by yourself.
ⓐ eat ⓑ sleep ⓒ organize ⓓ move
14. .... are made of cloth.
ⓐ Houseboats ⓑ Tents ⓒ Houses ⓓ Apartments

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

beds – garden – rooms – living room – house (بورسعيد - 2024)

My grandparents lives in a big (1)**house**. It's on the corner of the city. It has many rooms. There are two (2)**beds** in my bedroom. They have a big (3)**living room** with television and a couch. I love playing with my cousins in the (4)**garden**.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(السويس - 2024)

My name is Hazem. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and one bathroom. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch television in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hazem watch television?
In the living room.
2. Summarize the text in two sentences.
Hazem lives in a big house with his family. He loves the house.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Hazem's father is a ....
ⓐ teacher ⓑ doctor ⓒ farmer ⓓ fisherman
4. The opposite of the underlined word "big" is ....
ⓐ huge ⓑ small ⓒ enormous ⓓ giant

➲ Punctate the following:

1. they have a big balcony
They have a big balcony.
2. which is your favorite room (القاهرة - 2024)
Which is your favorite room?

(2) Lesson two

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister goes to .... to learn.
ⓐ school ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ post office ⓓ office
2. Noha went to the .... when she was sick.
ⓐ school ⓑ office ⓒ hospital ⓓ supermarket

3. They went to the .... to buy food.
ⓐ supermarket ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ office ⓓ hospital
4. Can you tell me where the .... is? I want to send a letter.
ⓐ hospital ⓑ school ⓒ post office ⓓ office
5. Ola works in a/an .... It has many desks and computers.
ⓐ hospital ⓑ park ⓒ supermarket ⓓ office
6. Nadia went to the .... to buy some new clothes.
ⓐ park ⓑ shopping mall ⓒ office ⓓ school
7. Fish live .... water.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ behind ⓓ between
8. A: .... is the key? B: It's on the table.
ⓐ What ⓑ Where ⓒ When ⓓ How
9. My school is .... of the shopping mall.
ⓐ next ⓑ behind ⓒ above ⓓ in front
10. Ola's house is .... the school and the city park.
ⓐ between ⓑ next to ⓒ on ⓓ behind
11. The bridge is .... the river.
ⓐ in ⓑ under ⓒ above ⓓ next
12. The pet is hiding .... the door.
ⓐ in front ⓑ between ⓒ next ⓓ behind
13. My house is .... to the Nile.
ⓐ in front ⓑ above ⓒ on ⓓ next
14. **A:** Can you see the pen? **B:** It's .... the book.
ⓐ next ⓑ between ⓒ under ⓓ in front
15. My book is .... the table. I can't see it. (الإسماعيلية- 2024)
ⓐ next ⓑ in front of ⓒ behind ⓓ on
16. The hospital is .... the shopping mall and the park.
ⓐ next ⓑ in front ⓒ on ⓓ between
17. Sara went to the .... to send a letter.
ⓐ school ⓑ hospital ⓒ post office ⓓ park
18. **A:** .... is the park? **B:** It's behind the office.
ⓐ When ⓑ Why ⓒ Where ⓓ Who
19. **A:** Where can I send .... ? **B:** In the post office.
ⓐ food ⓑ clothes ⓒ letters ⓓ games
20. Excuse me! Where is the .... ? I want to buy some food.
ⓐ school ⓑ hospital ⓒ supermarket ⓓ shopping mall
21. My dad goes to the .... when he feels sick.
ⓐ post office ⓑ hospital ⓒ office ⓓ supermarket
22. I can buy some new .... at the shopping mall.
ⓐ shoes ⓑ houses ⓒ tents ⓓ letters
23. My children never go to the .... on Friday. It's a holiday.
ⓐ supermarket ⓑ hospital ⓒ school ⓓ shopping mall

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. **Where**.................. **(How)** is my book? – On the table.
2. There is a chair **next**.................. **(in)** to the table.
3. Put your books **in**.................. **(under)** your bag, please.
4. The shopping mall is in front **of**.................. **(on)** the bank. (القاهرة - 2024)
5. The roots grow **under**.................. **(behind)** the soil.
6. The house is **between**.................. **(next)** the school and the supermarket.
7. The book is **on**.................. **(in)** the table. (أسوان - 2024)

8. Nadeen is hiding **behind**.................. (in front of) the tree.
9. The cat is **under**.................. (on) the table. I can't see it.
10. There are ten apples **in**.................. (in front) the fruit basket.
11. A: **Where**.................. (What) is the city bank, please? B: It's next to the park.
12. Look at the beautiful kite flying **above**.................. (under) the building.
13. The car is **between**.................. (in) the bike and the bus.
14. Where **is**.................. (are) the shopping mall.
15. The kitchen is next **to**.................. (of) the living room. (القاهرة - المرج - 2024)

➲ **Read and complete the text with the words:**

play – school – place – supermarket – buy (القاهرة - 2024)

I love my town. It is a good (1)**place**...... to live in. It is small, but it has (2)**supermarkets** offices, schools, and many other places. I walk to (3)**school**........ every morning to learn. My school is next to the park. I (4)**play**...... in the park with my friends.

➲ **Read the following then answer the questions:**

(الجيزة - 2024)

My name is Soha. I live in a small city. My city has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a school. I go to school by bus. My school is next to the hospital. I go to the park to play tennis. I go to the supermarket to buy different foods and drinks. I love my city.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Soha buy different foods and drinks?

At the supermarket.

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

Soha lives in a small city. The city has interesting places.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Soha's school is .... the hospital.
   ⓐ behind ⓑ next to ⓒ in front of ⓓ between
4. Soha plays tennis in the ....
   ⓐ school ⓑ park ⓒ supermarket ⓓ between

(3) Lesson three

➲ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. It is hot today. We need to turn on the .... (المنوفية - 2024)
   ⓐ bus ⓑ van ⓒ fan ⓓ fish
2. Excuse me! .... is the post office?
   ⓐ When ⓑ Why ⓒ Where ⓓ Who
3. To go to the mall, go .... ahead, then turn left.
   ⓐ street ⓑ straight ⓒ right ⓓ corner
4. Hana's house is .... the supermarket and the school.
   ⓐ between ⓑ next ⓒ in front ⓓ on
5. .... the second left. My house is on the right.
   ⓐ Travel ⓑ Go ⓒ Take ⓓ Come
6. Sherif .... English and Chinese.
   ⓐ says ⓑ meets ⓒ speaks ⓓ shouts
7. The hospital is .... the corner.
   ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ on
8. Go straight and .... left.
   ⓐ take ⓑ turn ⓒ see ⓓ come
9. The post office is .... the left.
   ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ between

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Excuse me! **Where** .... **(What)** is the supermarket, please?
2. **Turn** .... **(Turning)** left, my house is on the corner.
3. **Go** .... **(Went)** straight ahead. Then turn left.
4. The school is **on** .... **(in)** the corner of South Street.
5. **Take** .... **(Took)** the second left at the supermarket.
6. The hospital is **between** .... **(next)** the school and the supermarket.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

summer – down – meet – parents – world (القاهرة- 2024)

I live on a boat in the summer. My **(1) parents** ...... work on tourist boats, so I go with them. We travel up and **(2) down** ...... the Nile. I like the **(3) summer** ...... very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the **(4) world** ....

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My friend Sherif is from Aswan. He lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many **interesting** places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with tourists.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do Sherif's parents work?

On tourist boats.

2. Where is Sherif from? (القاهرة- 2024)

He is from Aswan.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Sherif likes the .... very much.
   ⓐ winter ⓑ fall ⓒ summer ⓓ spring
4. The underlined word "**interesting**" means.
   ⓐ nice ⓑ boring ⓒ bad ⓓ old

➲ Punctate the following:

1. my friend Sherif lives on a boat

My friend Sherif lives on a boat.

2. i can speak English and arabic. (الغربية- 2024)

I can speak English and Arabic.

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .... in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there. (الغربية - 2024)
   ⓐ schools ⓑ offices ⓒ beaches ⓓ stores
2. Mariam lives in a .... called Hurghada.
   ⓐ city ⓑ village ⓒ country ⓓ beach
3. About 190,000 people .... in Hurghada.
   ⓐ come ⓑ swim ⓒ live ⓓ work
4. The .... is where tourists can go on safaris.
   ⓐ beach ⓑ park ⓒ bazaars ⓓ Sahara Desert
5. We can buy beautiful things at the .... in Sahl Hasheesh.
   ⓐ bazaars ⓑ tourists ⓒ photos ⓓ gardens
6. We can buy food at the .... where Mona works.
   ⓐ desert ⓑ beach ⓒ supermarket ⓓ safari park

7. When we buy the food, Mona .... the food is fresh.
ⓐ eats ⓑ sells ⓒ sees ⓓ checks

8. The worker at the supermarket helps us when we can't .... something.
ⓐ find ⓑ live ⓒ go ⓓ meet

9. There's a beach and lots of .... things to do in Hurghada.
ⓐ scary ⓑ boring ⓒ interesting ⓓ strange

10. Soha is .... She helps everyone in her class.
ⓐ bad ⓑ kind ⓒ noisy ⓓ ugly

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

kind – food – supermarket – fresh – office

This is Hana. She works at the (1)**supermarket**........ near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy (2)**food**.......... Hana checks the food is (3)**fresh**.......... She helps us when we can't find something. She is very (4)**kind**........ and happy. We all love her.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safari. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Hurghada?
It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.

2. What are there in Sahl Hasheesh?
It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ Cairo ⓑ Aswan ⓒ Luxor ⓓ Hurghada

4. The underlined word "it" refer to ....
ⓐ the Red Sea ⓑ the beaches ⓒ Sahl Hasheesh ⓓ Sahara desert

➲ Punctate the following:

1. mona works at the supermarket (المنيا - 2024)
Mona works at the supermarket.

2. how many people live there
How many people live there?

(5) Unit five "Where do you work"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Youssef is a/an .... He loves making things work.
ⓐ bus driver ⓑ garbage collector ⓒ electrician ⓓ mail carrier

2. Here's the .... He collects the trash.
ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ bus driver ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ electrician

3. A plumber fixes .... and faucets.
ⓐ chairs ⓑ pipes ⓒ balls ⓓ cars

4. My room was .... yesterday. I had to tidy it.
ⓐ difficult ⓑ wet ⓒ messy ⓓ young

5. A/An .... drives to many different places.
ⓐ mechanic ⓑ driver ⓒ plumber ⓓ electrician

6. A/An .... brings us the parcels.
ⓐ garbage collector ⓑ bus driver ⓒ mail carrier ⓓ mechanic

7. The .... helps us fix pipes to get water. He is very important. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ tourist guide ⓑ plumber ⓒ electrician ⓓ mail carrier

8. A .... helps us all. He takes away all the trash. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ garbage collector ⓒ builder ⓓ mechanic

9. The .... fix the cars and buses. (بورسعيد- 2024)
ⓐ electricians' ⓑ mechanics ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ plumbers

10. Cairo produces around 20 million tons of .... every year.
ⓐ pipes ⓑ parcels ⓒ garbage ⓓ faucets

11. Plumbers fix pipes and .... (القاهرة- 2024)
ⓐ tables ⓑ chairs ⓒ cars ⓓ faucets

12. The .... arrived. Let's get on the bus.
ⓐ mechanic ⓑ bus driver ⓒ garbage collector ⓓ plumber

13. My clothes become .... after raining.
ⓐ dry ⓑ hoy ⓒ wet ⓓ near

14. I was much better at .... pipes and faucets than cars.
ⓐ fixing ⓑ driving ⓒ eating ⓓ reading

15. We need a mechanic to .... our car.
ⓐ drive ⓑ paint ⓒ play ⓓ fix

16. A mail carrier brings us ....
ⓐ pipes ⓑ faucets ⓒ parcels ⓓ cars

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

Mail carrier – mechanic – trash – electrician – faucets (القاهرة- 2024)

Different people have different jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and **(1)faucets** . A mechanic fixes cars. An **(2)electrician** makes things work. A **(3)mail carrier** has our parcels. A garbage collector takes the **(4)trash** . I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(المنوفية- 2024)

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers our parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to make our life easier.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does a mechanic do?
A mechanic fixes cars and buses.

2. Why should all workers work together?
To make our life easier.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ food ⓑ animals ⓒ jobs ⓓ places

4. The word ".........." in the text means garbage.
ⓐ trash ⓑ faucets ⓒ fixes ⓓ places

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Dad do you like your job
Dad, do you like your job?

(2) Lesson two

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Electricity is .... but we need it.
ⓐ safe ⓑ dangerous ⓒ wet ⓓ slow
2. We should use electricity ....
ⓐ fast ⓑ slowly ⓒ quickly ⓓ safely
3. To make the machine work, put the .... into a socket.
ⓐ bug ⓑ storm ⓒ plug ⓓ hand
4. .... are Ola's new tools.
ⓐ That ⓑ This ⓒ The ⓓ Those
5. Don't touch .... socket. It's dangerous.
ⓐ than ⓑ these ⓒ those ⓓ this
6. .... house over there is very old.
ⓐ They ⓑ These ⓒ That ⓓ Those
7. .... is such a nice place to live in.
ⓐ These ⓑ They ⓒ This ⓓ Those
8. An electric shock can .... us.
ⓐ travel ⓑ practice ⓒ use ⓓ burn
9. We sometimes see a flash of .... in a storm. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ faucet ⓑ water ⓒ shock ⓓ lightning
10. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands. It's very dangerous. (المنوفية- 2024)
ⓐ cute ⓑ dry ⓒ wet ⓓ small
11. .... are my books.
ⓐ That ⓑ Those ⓒ This ⓓ The
12. .... bird is so near. I can see it well.
ⓐ That ⓑ This ⓒ They ⓓ Those

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. This **is** .... (are) the mail carrier. (الإسكندرية- 2024)
2. Those **are** .... (is) my pencils. (القاهرة- 2024)
3. That **is** .... (are) your pen. (البحيرة- 2024)
4. These **are** .... (is) the electrician's tools. (دمياط- 2024)
5. This **is** .... (are) a socket. (القاهرة- 2024)
6. Look at **that** .... (those) butterfly outside! It's flying away.
7. **These** .... (This) are the plumber's tools. (القاهرة- 2024)
8. This car **is** .... (are) very expensive.
9. Nour found **those** .... (that) shells on the beach last summer.
10. **That** .... (Those) cloud look like a teddy bear.
11. **These** .... (This) are Noha and Ola. They are my best friends.
12. Can you get **that** .... (those) apple on the cupboard?
13. **Those** .... (That) mountains are very high.
14. Let's water **these** .... (this) plants together.
15. **These** .... (This) shoes look very expensive.
16. **Those** .... (That) flowers over there are very beautiful.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

electrician – fast – year – flash – dangerous

Mazen wants to be an (1)**electrician**....... Electricity is very (2)**dangerous** so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very (3)**fast**........ close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a (4)**flash**........ of lightning.

➲ Punctate the following:

1. is electricity dangerous (القاهرة- 2023)

Is electricity dangerous?

(3) Lesson three

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hana used the .... to open old radios and cell phones.
   ⓐ blocks ⓑ tape measure ⓒ screwdriver ⓓ cousins
2. Amir is always .... He's never angry.
   ⓐ careful ⓑ sad ⓒ sorry ⓓ patient
3. My daughter is a/an .... She is eighteen.
   ⓐ child ⓑ baby ⓒ adult ⓓ cousin
4. Talia always carried a tape .... and a pencil.
   ⓐ measure ⓑ doll ⓒ block ⓓ screwdriver
5. My sister is .... She loves to know everything.
   ⓐ patient ⓑ curious ⓒ favorite ⓓ little
6. My father is an electrician. He can fix ....
   ⓐ tables ⓑ pipes ⓒ radios ⓓ faucets
7. I use my .... to speak with my friends.
   ⓐ blocks ⓑ cell phone ⓒ screwdriver ⓓ tape measure
8. The teacher .... the new lesson very well.
   ⓐ explained ⓑ carried ⓒ changed ⓓ opened

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. When Lara **was**............ **(is)** little, she loved to experiment.
2. Amir **helped**............ **(help)** all his friends when he was young.
3. When my sister **was**............ **(is)** a child, she played with blocks. (المنوفية- 2024)
4. When Nadia was young, she **started**............ **(start)** making new things.
5. Dad **used**............ **(use)** the screwdriver to open the cell phone yesterday.
6. Nour **was**............ **(be)** never angry when he was little.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a (1)**screwdriver**............ and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had (2)**electricity**............ Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about (3)**safety**............ with electricity. Now, Lama is an (4)**electrician**............ and she loves her job very much.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية- 2024)

When Salma was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Salma when you want to change something in your house.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Salma can work as an electrician or an architect in the future?

I think she can work as an architect.

2. Why did Salma use the tape measure?

To measure the things and make them.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text talks about ....
   ⓐ Heba ⓑ Mona ⓒ Salma's sister ⓓ Salma
4. When Salma was a baby, she played with ....
   ⓐ blocks ⓑ dolls ⓒ cars ⓓ bikes

➲ Punctate the following:

1. Lara Talia, and amir are all adults

Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults.

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Pros" are the .... points about something.
   ⓐ bad ⓑ good ⓒ easy ⓓ difficult
2. One of the .... of being a mail carrier is carrying heavy mail bags.
   ⓐ pros ⓑ ants ⓒ cons ⓓ tons
3. A mail carrier works .... all day.
   ⓐ at home ⓑ at office ⓒ inside ⓓ outside
4. It's great for the mail carrier when the weather is ....
   ⓐ hot ⓑ windy ⓒ cold ⓓ good
5. .... likes meeting the mail carrier.
   ⓐ Everybody ⓑ Nobody ⓒ No one ⓓ No people
6. Being a mail carrier is not a/an .... job.
   ⓐ good ⓑ important ⓒ easy ⓓ useful
7. There are many .... that made our school.
   ⓐ doctors ⓑ teachers ⓒ workers ⓓ students
8. The .... fix the cars and buses that bring children to school.
   ⓐ plumbers ⓑ cleaners ⓒ electricians ⓓ mechanics
9. .... keep the school clean.
   ⓐ Bus drivers ⓑ Teachers ⓒ Cleaners ⓓ Plumbers
10. The .... help us use lights.
   ⓐ cleaners ⓑ doctors ⓒ electricians ⓓ mail carriers
11. The electrician connects .... (القاهرة- 2024)
   ⓐ bus ⓑ bag ⓒ garbage ⓓ electricity
12. Our .... bring the children to school.
   ⓐ garbage collectors ⓑ mechanics ⓒ plumbers ⓓ bus drivers

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

mail carrier – nice – hot – walk – outside

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are (1) **outside** all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very (2) **hot** or cold. Mail carriers (3) **walk** all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes meeting the (4) **mail carrier**.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I want to be a mail carrier. But I will be outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. My brother Ali wants to be an electrician to connect electricity so that people can use lights easily. My friend Maged wants to be a bus driver to bring the children to school. My friend Noha wants to be a mechanic to fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Maged want to be a bus driver?

To bring the children to school.

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

Everyone likes working a different job.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali wants to be a/an ....
   ⓐ engineer ⓑ electrician ⓒ mail carrier ⓓ teacher
4. .... wants to be a mechanic.
   ⓐ Tamer ⓑ Maged ⓒ Noha ⓓ Father

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. workers keep the school clean (الشرقية- 2024)

Workers keep the school clean.

2. what does the bus driver do (المنوفية- 2024)

What does the bus driver do?

(6) Unit six "What do you do"

(1) Lesson one

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars, buses, and trains are forms of ....
   ⓐ foods ⓑ colors ⓒ transportation ⓓ schools
2. Ahmed is a .... He works in the tourism industry.
   ⓐ farmer ⓑ librarian ⓒ guide ⓓ fisherman
3. Fishermen use nets and .... to catch fish.
   ⓐ animals ⓑ hotels ⓒ schools ⓓ boats
4. My father is a farmer. He works in the .... industry.
   ⓐ farming ⓑ fishing ⓒ education ⓓ tourism
5. Habiba is a guide. She works with .... from all over the world.
   ⓐ boats ⓑ fish ⓒ tourists ⓓ animals
6. Before you pick up the fruit, you give them .... to grow.
   ⓐ books ⓑ nutrients ⓒ nets ⓓ hotels
7. A .... works in seas or rivers. He catches a lot of fish. (الشرقية- 2024)
   ⓐ plumber ⓑ teacher ⓒ fisherman ⓓ guide
8. .... grow food for us.
   ⓐ Farmers ⓑ Teachers ⓒ Doctors ⓓ Vets
9. Teachers work in the .... industry.
   ⓐ farming ⓑ tourism ⓒ education ⓓ fishing
10. A farmer sends the fruit to the .... to make orange juice.
   ⓐ hotel ⓑ library ⓒ sea ⓓ factory

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. I **am** .... **(be)** a farmer and I work in the farming industry.
2. My father **is** .... **(be)** a librarian.
3. They **are** .... **(be)** guides. They work in the tourism industry.
4. The fisherman **wakes** .... **(wake)** up early and goes out on his boat.
5. Mom **sells** .... **(sell)** fish in the market.
6. We **send** .... **(sending)** the oranges to the factory to make orange juice.

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

electricity – job – information – library – librarian (الدقهلية- 2024)

I'm Sherifa. I like books very much. I'm a **(1) librarian**............. I work in a school **(2) library**. It's my **(3) job** ...... to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the **(4) information** ...... they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية- 2024)

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman; he works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then, in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer; he works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a guide; he explains history of the places that tourists visit.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who explains the history to tourists?

A guide.

2. What does a farmer do?

He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
   ⓐ farmers ⓑ fishermen ⓒ guides ⓓ jobs
4. A .... goes out on his boat and catches fish.
   ⓐ farmer ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ teacher

➲ Punctuate the following:

1. what do librarians do

What do librarians do?

2. i work in the tourism industry (القاهرة- 2024)

I work in the tourism industry.

(2) Lesson two

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We can make .... from energy sources.
   ⓐ shoes ⓑ videos ⓒ electricity ⓓ fun
2. .... energy is a renewable energy source that comes from the sun.
   ⓐ Oil ⓑ Solar ⓒ Wind ⓓ Gas
3. .... energy is clean.
   ⓐ Coal ⓑ Gas ⓒ Oil ⓓ Solar
4. I like looking .... of the window.
   ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ out ⓓ on
5. .... sources can grow again or never run out.
   ⓐ Renewable ⓑ Non-renewable ⓒ Wrong ⓓ Right
6. Mango is my favorite ....
   ⓐ food ⓑ place ⓒ vegetable ⓓ fruit

7. We get wood from ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ houses ⓒ trees ⓓ money

8. Coal and oil are .... energy sources.
ⓐ renewable ⓑ non-renewable ⓒ new ⓓ old

9. The chair is made of ....
ⓐ seeds ⓑ wood ⓒ oil ⓓ coal

10. They cut .... the tree yesterday.
ⓐ down ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ at

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

wind – play – use – electricity – sources (الاسكندرية- 2024)

Renewable energy **(1)** **sources** are everywhere. Wave, solar, and **(2)** **wind** energy are renewable energy sources. We can use these sources to make **(3)** **electricity**. There are many things today that **(4)** **use** electricity.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ali and Waleed are brothers. Each brother had a beautiful orange tree next to his house. The brothers ate beautiful oranges and their children played under the trees. One day, Waleed decided to sell his tree because he needed money. He cut the wood and sold it. Waleed was happy. Next year, Ali's orange tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Ali more oranges. Waleed looked out of the window. There was no orange tree. He had no oranges and no more wood. Ali helped Waleed plant an orange seed to grow into a big tree.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Waleed decide to cut down his orange tree?
Because he needed money.

2. How did Ali help Waleed?
Ali Helped Waleed plant and orange seed to grow into a big tree.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali and Waleed are ....
ⓐ sisters ⓑ friends ⓒ classmates ⓓ brothers

4. Each brother had a beautiful .... tree next to his house
ⓐ orange ⓑ banana ⓒ mango ⓓ strawberry

➲ Punctate the following:

1. sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger
Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger.

2. would you cut the mango tree (الجيزة- 2024)
Would you cut the mango tree?

(3) Lesson three

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The old .... sells fresh fish.
ⓐ mom ⓑ grandpa ⓒ mechanic ⓓ fisherman

2. The old man .... around the village in an old van.
ⓐ walks ⓑ shouts ⓒ drives ⓓ swims

3. I was .... when I couldn't find my book.
ⓐ happy ⓑ disappointed ⓒ excited ⓓ interested

4. Grandpa was a .... He could fix cars.
ⓐ farmer ⓑ fisherman ⓒ guide ⓓ mechanic

5. The old man was .... when my mom fixed the engine.
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ sad ⓒ worried ⓓ surprised

6. I can't start the van. The .... doesn't work.
ⓐ fish ⓑ engine ⓒ job ⓓ village

7. Nour .... ice cream. She never eats it.
ⓐ likes ⓑ dislikes ⓒ disagrees ⓓ disobeys
8. Where is my cat? It .... somewhere.
ⓐ disappeared ⓑ disagreed ⓒ disliked ⓓ disappointed
9. A: I think pizza is the best food ever. B: No, I .... with you.
ⓐ agree ⓑ dislike ⓒ disagree ⓓ obey
10. Manal was sorry because she .... her teacher.
ⓐ obeyed ⓑ liked ⓒ agreed ⓓ disobeyed

➲ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. We shouldn't **disobey** (obey) our parents.
2. Hossam **dislikes** (likes) fish. He never eats it.
3. Ola was **disappointed** (appointed) when she lost the race.
4. The two sisters always **disagree** (agree). They never agree.
5. My keys **disappeared** (appeared). Can you help me find them?

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

village – surprised – disappointed – engine – fish (الجيزة- 2024)

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove around the (1) **village** in an old van. He sold fresh (2) **fish** . Everyone liked his fresh fish. One day, he was (3) **disappointed** because he couldn't start the van. Mom fixed the (4) **engine** and helped the old man.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

There was an old fisherman who liked his job. He drove around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My grandpa saw the man. It was hot in the sun. he wanted to help. He looked at the old van's engine. It was a very **simple** problem. he fixed the engine. The fisherman was surprised and happy. He gave my grandpa ten fresh fish.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who fixed the van?
The writers grandpa.
2. Why was the fisherman happy at the end?
Because his van got fixed.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The fisherman was .... because he couldn't start his van
ⓐ sad ⓑ surprised ⓒ happy ⓓ fresh
4. The underlined word "simple" means ....
ⓐ hard ⓑ big ⓒ easy ⓓ young

➲ Punctate the following:

1. it's a very simple problem
It's a very simple problem.
2. The fisherman couldnt start his van (الشرقية- 2024)
The fisherman couldn't start his van.

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➲ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's hard work, but it's ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ exciting ⓒ boring ⓓ difficult
2. For teachers, every day is ....
ⓐ boring ⓑ similar ⓒ the same ⓓ different
3. A good teacher can change students' ....
ⓐ books ⓑ lives ⓒ trash ⓓ questions

4. Good teachers need to .... their students.
ⓐ know ⓑ learn ⓒ encourage ⓓ think

5. Teachers need to think ....
ⓐ slowly ⓑ quickly ⓒ nearly ⓓ hardly

6. A good teacher should be very ....
ⓐ surprising ⓑ different ⓒ exciting ⓓ patient

7. We should show .... to people around us.
ⓐ teachers ⓑ students ⓒ questions ⓓ respect

8. I respect the cleaner. I don't .... trash.
ⓐ eat ⓑ throw ⓒ buy ⓓ sell

9. I say thank you to the .... when I get off the bus.
ⓐ bus driver ⓑ librarian ⓒ teacher ⓓ cleaner

10. I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the ....
ⓐ bag ⓑ bus ⓒ shelf ⓓ school

➲ Read and complete the text with the words:

(القاهرة- 2024)

change – surprising – easy – patient – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask **(1) surprising** questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to **(2) encourage** their students. They need to be very **(3) patient**. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can **(4) change** their students' lives.

➲ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيزة- 2024)

We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people. I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the dentist. I listen to his/her advice.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How do we show respect to the teacher?
We listen to him carefully.

2. Is it important to show respect to the people around us?
Yes, it is.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about ....
ⓐ dentist ⓑ teacher ⓒ respect ⓓ cleaner

4. We .... respect to the bus driver.
ⓐ eat ⓑ hop ⓒ show ⓓ jump

➲ Punctate the following:

1. i listen to my teacher carefully
I listen to my teacher carefully.

2. what job do you want to have (الاسكندرية- 2024)
What job do you want to have?



كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين

مثلا ازاى نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9



خطوة 1

خطوة 2
اختيار اسم الطابعة بتاعتك

خطوة 3
كتابة الصفحات المراد طباعتها
نكتب رقم 4 ثم نكتب الشرطة دي – ثم نكتب 9

خطوة 4
اختيار نوع الورق

خطوة 5
اختيار A4

خطوة 6